



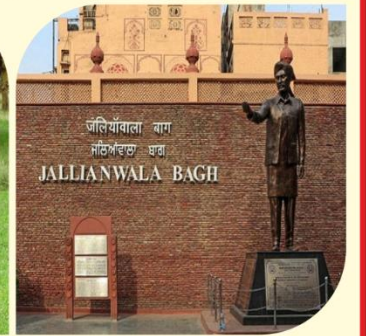
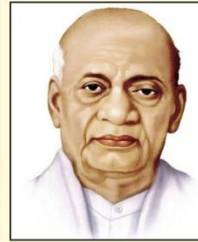
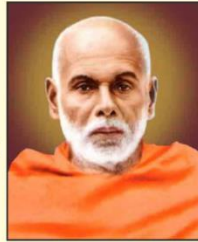
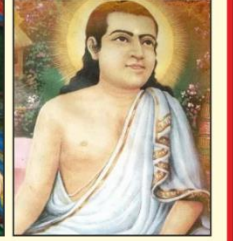
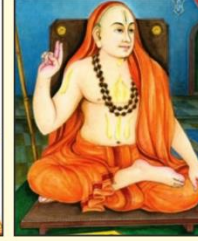
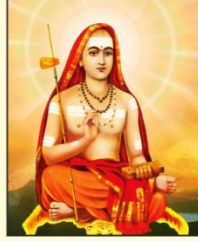
# SOCIAL SCIENCE

## TEXTBOOK

Veda Bhushan V Year / Purva Madhyama - II Year / Class X

**MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA SANSKRIT SHIKSHA BOARD**  
(Established and Recognized by the Ministry of Education, Government of India)

पूर्वीरस्य निष्पिधो मर्त्येषु पुरू वसूनि पृथिवी विभर्ति।  
इन्द्राय द्याव ओषधीरुतापो रथिं रक्षन्ति जीरयो वनानि ॥  
निष्पिध्वरीस्त ओषधीरुतापो रथिं त इन्द्र पृथिवी विभर्ति।  
सखायस्ते वामभाजः स्याम महद्देवानामसुरत्वमेकम् ॥  
यथा-व्वनस्पतयेस्वाहामरुतामोजसेस्वाहेन्द्रस्येन्द्रियायस्वाहा।  
पृथिविमातर्माहाहि ऽ सीम्मोऽअहन्त्वाम् ॥  
आपोहयद्द्रुहृतीर्विश्रवमायन्नगर्भन्दधानाजनयन्तीरग्निम् ॥  
ततोदेवानां समवर्त्ततासुरेकं कस्मैदेवायहविषाव्विधेम ॥  
इन्द्रो दीर्घाय चक्षस आ सूर्यण रोहयद्वि वि गोभिरद्विमैरयत् ॥  
मित्रं हुवे । पूतदक्षं व्वरुणञ्चरिशदसम् ॥  
धियद्भुताचीं साधन्ता ॥



**MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)**  
(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpujn@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in

---

**Note :-**

Any Suggestion may be sent in email: [msrvvp.textbooks@gmail.com](mailto:msrvvp.textbooks@gmail.com), along with the proposed texts for replacement/addition/correction etc., and sender's identification details. The texts may be sent in Unicode font only.

# SOCIAL SCIENCE

## TEXTBOOK

Veda Bhushan V Year / Purva Madhyama - II Year / Class X

**MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA SANSKRIT SHIKSHA BOARD**

(Established and Recognized by the Ministry of Education, Government of India)



**MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)**

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Veda Vidya Marg, Chintaman, Jawasiya, Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh 456006

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpunj@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in

---

Text book developed by :  
Cover and decoration :  
Drawing :  
Technical Support :  
Composed by :  
Reviewers :

©Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Vedavidya Pratishthan, Ujjain ISBN:

Price :

Edition : 1<sup>st</sup> Edition.

Published Copies :

Paper usage : Printed on 80 GSM paper with RSTB Watermark

Publisher : Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Vedavidya  
Pratishthan (Under the Ministry of  
Education, Govt. of India) Vedavidya Marg,  
Chintaman Ganesh, Post Jawasiya, Ujjain  
(M.P.) 456006

Email: [msrvvpujn@gmail.com](mailto:msrvvpujn@gmail.com),

Web: [msrvvp.ac.in](http://msrvvp.ac.in)

Phone: (0734) 2502255, 2502254

---

## PREFACE

(In the light of NEP 2020)

The Ministry of Education (Department of Higher Education), Government of India established Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan in Delhi under the Chairmanship of Hon'ble Education Minister ( then Minister of Human Resource Development) under the Societies Registration Act, 1860 (XXI of 1860) on 20th January, 1987. The Government of India notified the resolution in the Gazette of India vide no 6-3/85- SKT-IV dated 30-3-1987 for establishment of the Pratishthan for preservation, conservation, propagation and development of oral tradition of Vedic studies (Veda Samhita, Padapatha to Ghanapatha, Vedanga, Veda Bhashya etc), recitation and intonation of Vedas etc and interpretation of Vedas in scientific lines. In the year 1993 the name of the organization was changed to Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan (MSRVVP) and it was shifted to Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh.

The National Education Policy of 1986 and Revised Policy Formulations of 1992 and also Programme of Action (PoA) 1992 have mandated Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan for promoting Vedic education throughout the country. The importance of India's ancient fund of knowledge, oral tradition and employing traditional Guru's for oral education was also emphasized in the PoA.

In accordance with the aspirations of the nation, national consensus and policy in favour of establishing a Board for Veda and Sanskrit Education at national level, the General Body and the Governing Council

---

of MSRVVP under the Chairmanship of Hon'ble Education Minister, Government of India, have set up "Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board" (MSRVSSB) in tune with the mandate of the Pratishthan and its implementation strategies. The Board is necessary for the fulfillment of the objectives of MSRVVP as envisioned in the MoA and Rules. The Board has been approved by the Ministry of Education, Government of India and recognized by the Association of Indian Universities, New Delhi. The bye-laws of the Board have been vetted by Central Board of Secondary Education and curriculum structure have been concurred by the National Council of Educational Research and Training, New Delhi.

It may also be mentioned here that the committee "Vision and Roadmap for the Development of Sanskrit - Ten year perspective Plan", under the Chairmanship of Shri N. Gopaldaswamy, former CEC, constituted by the Ministry of Education Govt. of India in 2015 recommended for establishment of a Board of Examination for standardization, affiliation, examination, recognition, authentication of Veda Sanskrit education up to the secondary school level. The committee was of the opinion that the primary level of Vedic and Sanskrit studies should be inspiring, motivating and joyful. It is also desirable to include subjects of modern education into Vedic and Sanskrit Pathashalas in a balanced manner. The course content of these Pathashalas should be designed to suit to the needs of the contemporary society and also for finding solutions to modern problems by reinventing ancient knowledge.

With regard to Veda Pathashala-s it is felt that they need further

---

---

standardization of recitation skills along with introduction of graded materials of Sanskrit and modern subjects so that the students can ultimately acquire the capabilities of studying Veda bhashya-s and mainstreaming of students is achieved for their further studies. Due emphasis may also be given for the study of Vikriti Patha of Vedas at an appropriate level. The members of the committee have also expressed their concern that the Vedic recitation studies are not uniformly spread all over India; therefore, due steps may be taken to improve the situation without in anyway interfering with regional variations of recitation styles and teaching method of Vedic recitation.

It was also felt that since Veda and Sanskrit are inseparable and complementary to each other and since the recognition and affiliation problems are same for all the Veda Pathashalas and Sanskrit Pathashalas throughout the country, a Board may be constituted for both together. The committee observed that the examinations conducted by the Board should have legally valid recognition enjoying parity with modern Board system of education. The committee observed that the Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain may be given the status of Board of Examinations with the name “Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrita Vidya Parishat with headquarters in Ujjain which will continue all programs and activities which were being conducted hitherto in addition to being a Board of Examinations.

The promotion of Vedic education is for a comprehensive study of India’s glorious knowledge tradition and encompasses multi-layered oral tradition of Vedic Studies (Veda Samhita, Padapatha to Ghanapatha,

---

---

Vedanga, and Veda Bhashya etc), recitation and intonation, and Sanskrit knowledge system content. In view of the policy of mainstreaming of traditional students and on the basis of national consensus among the policy making bodies focusing on Vedic education, the scheme of study of Veda stretching up to seven years in Pratishthan also entails study of various other modern subjects such as Sanskrit, English, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture, etc. as per the syllabus and availability of time. In view of NEP 2020, this scheme of study is with appropriate inputs of Vedic knowledge and drawing the parallels of modern knowledge in curriculum content focusing on Indian Knowledge System.

In Veda Pathashala-s, GSP Units and Gurukula-s of MSRVP, affiliated to the Board transact the curriculum primarily based on oral tradition of a particular complete Veda Shakha with perfect intonation and memorization, with additional subsidiary modern subjects such as English, Sanskrit, Mathematics, Science, Social Science and SUPW. Gradually, the Veda Pathashala-s will also introduce other skill and vocational subjects as per their resources.

It is a well-known fact that there were 1131 shakha-s or recensions of Vedas; namely 21 in Rigveda, 101 in Yajurveda, 1000 in Samaveda and 9 in Atharva Veda. In course of time, a large number of these shakhas became extinct and presently only 10 Shakhas, namely, one in Rigveda, 4 in Yajurveda, 3 in Samaveda and 2 in Atharvaveda are existing in recitation form on which Indian Knowledge System is founded now. Even in regard to these 10 Shakhas, there are very few representative

---



---

Vedapathis who are continuing the oral Vedic tradition/ Veda recitation/Veda knowledge tradition in its pristine and complete form. Unless there is a full focus for Vedic learning as per oral tradition, the system will vanish in near future. These aspects of Oral Vedic studies are neither taught nor included in the syllabus of any modern system of school education, nor do the schools/Boards have the systemic expertise to incorporate and conduct them in the conventional modern schools.

The Vedic students who learn oral tradition/ recitation of Veda are there in their homes in remote villages, in serene and idyllic locations, in Veda Gurukulas, (GSP Units), in Veda Pathashala-s, in Vedic Ashrams etc. and their effort for Veda study stretches to around 1900 – 2100 hours per year; which is double the time of other conventional school Board's learning system. Vedic students have to have complete Veda by-heart and recite verbatim with intonation (*udatta, anudatta, swaritaetc*); on the strength of memory and guru parampara, without looking at any book/pothi. Because of unique ways of chanting the Veda mantras, unbroken oral transmission of Vedas and its practices, this has received the recognition in the UNESCO-World Oral Heritage in the list of Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity. Therefore, due emphasis is required to be given to maintain the pristine and complete integrity of the centuries old Vedic Education (oral tradition/ recitation/ Veda knowledge Tradition). Keeping this aspect in view the MSRVVP and the Board have adopted unique type of Veda curriculum with modern subjects like Sanskrit, English, Vernacular language, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture

---

etc. as well as skill and vocational subjects as prescribed by NEP 2020.

As per Vedic philosophy, any person can become happy if he or she learns both *Para-Vidya* and *Apara-Vidya*. The materialistic knowledge from the Vedas, their auxiliary branches and subjects of material interest were called *Apara-Vidya*. The knowledge of supreme reality, the ultimate quest from Vedas, Upanishads is called *Para-Vidya*. In all the total number of subjects to be studied as part of Veda and its auxiliaries are fourteen. There are fourteen branches of learning or *Vidyas* - four Vedas, Six Vedangas, Mimamsa (Purva Mimamsa and Uttara Mimamsa), Nyaya, Puranas and Dharma shastra. These fourteen along with Ayurveda, Dhanurveda, Gandharvaveda and Arthashastra become eighteen subjects for learning. All curriculum transaction was in Sanskrit language, as Sanskrit was the spoken language for a long time in this sub-continent.

Eighteen Shilpa-s or industrial and technical arts and crafts were mentioned with regard to the Shala at Takshashila. The following 18 skills/Vocational subjects are reported to be subjects of the study– (1) Vocal music (2) Instrumental music (3) Dancing (4) Painting (5) Mathematics (6) Accountancy (7) Engineering (8) Sculpture (9) Cattle breeding (10) Commerce (11) Medicine (12) Agriculture (13) Conveyancing and law (14) Administrative training (15) Archery and Military art (16) Magic (17) Snake charming (18) Art of finding hidden treasures.

For technical education in the above mentioned arts and crafts an apprenticeship system was developed in ancient India. As per the Upanishadic vision, the vidya and avidya make a person perfect to lead

---

contented life here and liberation here-after.

Indian civilization has a strong tradition of learning of shastra-s, science and technology. Ancient India was a land of sages and seers as well as of scholars and scientists. Research has shown that India had been a Vishwa Guru, contributing to the field of learning (vidya-spiritual knowledge and avidya- materialistic knowledge) and learning centers like modern universities were set up. Many science and technology based advancements of that time, learning methodologies, theories and techniques discovered by the ancient sages have created and strengthened the fundamentals of our knowledge on many aspects, may it be on astronomy, physics, chemistry, mathematics, medicine, technology, phonetics, grammar etc. This needs to be essentially understood by every Indian to be proud citizen of this great country!

The idea of India like “Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam” quoted at the entrance of the Parliament of India and many Veda Mantra-s quoted by constitutional authorities on various occasions are understood only on study of the Vedas and true inspiration can be drawn only by pondering over them. The inherent equality of all beings as embodiment of “sat, chit, ananda” has been emphasized in the Vedas and throughout the Vedic literature.

Many scholars have emphasized that Veda-s are also a source of scientific knowledge and we have to look into Vedas and other scriptural sources of India for the solution of modern problems, which the whole world is facing now. Unless students are taught the recitation of Vedas, knowledge content of Vedas and Vedic philosophy as an embodiment of

---

---

spiritual and scientific knowledge, it is not possible to spread the message of Vedas to fulfill the aspiration of modern India.

The teaching of Veda (Vedic oral tradition/ Veda recitation/ Veda knowledge Tradition) is neither only religious education nor only religious instruction. It will be unreasonable to say that Vedic study is only a religious instruction. Veda-s are not religious texts only and they do not contain only religious tenets; they are the corpus of pure knowledge which are most useful to humanity as whole. Hence, instruction or education in Veda-s cannot be construed as only “religious education/religious instruction.”

Terming “teaching of Veda as a religious education” is not in consonance with the judgment of the Hon’ble Supreme Court (AIR 2013: 15 SCC 677), in Civil Appeal no. 6736 of 2004 (Date of judgment-3rd July 2013). The Vedas are not only religious texts, but they also contain the knowledge in the disciplines of mathematics, astronomy, meteorology, chemistry, hydraulics, physics, science and technology, agriculture, philosophy, yoga, education, poetics, grammar, linguistics etc. which has been brought out in the judgment by the Hon’ble Supreme Court of India.

**Vedic education through establishment of Board in compliance with NEP-2020**

The National Education Policy-2020 firmly recognizes the Indian Knowledge Systems (also known as 'Sanskrit Knowledge Systems'), their importance and their inclusion in the curriculum, and the flexible approach in combining various subjects. Arts’ and Humanities’ students will also learn science; try to acquire vocational subjects and soft skills.

---

---

India's special heritage in the arts, sciences and other fields will be helpful in moving towards multi-disciplinary education. The policy has been formulated to combine and draw inspiration from India's rich, ancient and modern culture and knowledge systems and traditions. The importance, relevance and beauty of India's classical languages and literature is also very important for a meaningful understanding the national aspiration. Sanskrit, being an important modern language mentioned in the Eighth Schedule of Indian Constitution, its classical literature that is greater in volume than that of Latin and Greek put together, contains vast treasures of mathematics, philosophy, grammar, music, politics, medicine, architecture, metallurgy, drama, poetry, storytelling, and more (known as 'Sanskrit Knowledge Systems'). These rich Sanskrit Knowledge System legacies for world heritage should not only be nurtured and preserved for posterity but also enhanced through research and put in to use in our education system, curriculum and put to new uses. All of these literatures have been composed over thousands of years by people from all walks of life, with a wide range of socio-economic background and vibrant philosophy. Sanskrit will be taught in engaging and experiential as well as contemporary relevant methods. The use of Sanskrit knowledge system is exclusively through listening to sound and pronunciation. Sanskrit textbooks at the Foundation and Middle School level will be available in Simple Standard Sanskrit (SSS) to teach Sanskrit through Sanskrit (STS) and make its study enjoyable. Phonetics and pronunciation prescriptions in NEP 2020 apply to the Vedas, the oral tradition of the Vedas and Vedic education, as they are founded upon

---

---

phonetics and pronunciation.

There is no clear distinction made between arts and science, between curricular and extra-curricular activities, between vocational and academic streams, etc. The emphasis in NEP 2020 is on the development of a multi-disciplinary and holistic education among the sciences, social sciences, arts, humanities and sports for a multi-disciplinary world to ensure the unity and integrity of all knowledge. Moral, human and constitutional values like empathy, respect for others, cleanliness, courtesy, democratic spirit, spirit of service, respect for public property, scientific temper, freedom, responsibility, pluralism, equality and justice are emphasized.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 4.23 contains instructions on the pedagogic integration of essential subjects, skills and abilities. Students will be given a large amount of flexible options in choosing their individual curriculum; but in today's fast-changing world, all students must learn certain fundamental core subjects, skills and abilities to be a well-grounded, successful, innovative, adaptable and productive individual in modern society. Students must develop scientific temper and evidence based thinking, creativity and innovation, aesthetics and sense of art, oral and written expression and communication, health and nutrition, physical education, fitness, health and sport, collaboration and teamwork, problem solving and logical thinking, vocational exposure and skills, digital literacy, coding and computational thinking, ethics and moral reasoning, knowledge and practice of human and constitutional values, gender sensitivity, fundamental duties, citizenship skills and

---

---

values, knowledge of India, environmental awareness etc. Knowledge of these skills include conservation, sanitation and hygiene, current affairs and important issues facing local communities, the states, the country and the world, as well as proficiency in multiple languages. In order to enhance the linguistic skills of children and to preserve these rich languages and their artistic treasures, all students in all schools, public or private, shall have the option of learning at least two years in one classical language of India and its related literature.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 4.27 states that -“Knowledge of India” includes knowledge from ancient India and its contributions to modern India and its successes and challenges, and a clear sense of India’s future aspirations with regard to education, health, environment, etc. These elements will be incorporated in an accurate and scientific manner throughout the school curriculum wherever relevant; in particular, Indian Knowledge Systems, including tribal knowledge and indigenous and traditional ways of learning, will be covered and included in mathematics, astronomy, philosophy, yoga, architecture, medicine, agriculture, engineering, linguistics, literature, sports, games, as well as in governance, polity, conservation. It will have informative topics on inspirational personalities of ancient and modern India in the fields of medicinal practices, forest management, traditional (organic) crop cultivation, natural farming, indigenous sports, science and other fields.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 11.1 gives directions to move towards holistic and multidisciplinary education. India emphasizes an ancient tradition of learning in a holistic and multidisciplinary manner, including

---

---

the knowledge of 64 arts such as singing and painting, scientific fields such as chemistry and mathematics, vocational fields such as carpentry, tailoring; professional work such as medicine and engineering, as well as the soft skills of communication, discussion and negotiation etc. which were also taught at ancient universities such as Takshashila and Nalanda. The idea that all branches of creative human endeavour, including mathematics, science, vocational subjects and soft skills, should be considered 'arts', has a predominantly Indian origin. This concept of 'knowledge of the many arts' or what is often called 'liberal arts' in modern times (i.e., a liberal conception of the arts) will be our part of education system.

At point No. 11.3 the NEP-2020 further reiterates that such an education system “would aim to develop all capacities of human beings - intellectual, aesthetic, social, physical, emotional, and moral in an integrated manner. Such an education will help develop well-rounded individuals that possess critical 21st century capacities in fields across the arts, humanities, languages, sciences, social sciences, and professional, technical, and vocational fields; an ethic of social engagement; soft skills, such as communication, discussion and debate; and rigorous specialization in a chosen field or fields. Such a holistic education shall be, in the long term, the approach of all undergraduate programmes, including those in professional, technical, and vocational disciplines.”

The NEP-2020 at point no. 22.1 contains instructions for the promotion of Indian languages, art and culture. India is a rich storehouse of culture – which has evolved over thousands of years, and is reflected

---



---

in its art, literary works, customs, traditions, linguistic expressions, artifacts, historical and cultural heritage sites, etc. Traveling in India, experiencing Indian hospitality, buying beautiful handicrafts and handmade clothes of India, reading ancient literature of India, practicing yoga and meditation, getting inspired by Indian philosophy, participating in festivals, appreciating India's diverse music and art and watching Indian films are some of the ways through which millions of people around the world participate in, enjoy and benefit from this cultural heritage of India every day.

In NEP-2020 at point no. 22.2 there are instructions about Indian arts. Promotion of Indian art and culture is important for India and to all of us. To inculcate in children a sense of our own identity, belonging and an appreciation of other culture and identity, it is necessary to develop in children key abilities such as cultural awareness and expression. Unity, positive cultural identity and self-esteem can be built in children only by developing a sense and knowledge of their cultural history, art, language and tradition. Therefore, the contribution of cultural awareness and expression is important for personal and social well-being.

The core Vedic Education (Vedic Oral Tradition / Veda Path / Veda Knowledge Tradition) of Pratishthan along with other essential modern subjects- Sanskrit, English, Mother tongue, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture, Indian Art, Socially useful productive work etc., based on the IKS inputs are the foundations/sources of texts books of Pratishthan and Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board. These inputs are in

---

tune with the NEP 2020. The draft books are made available in pdf form keeping in view the NEP 2020 stipulations, requirements of MSRVVP students and the advice of educational thinkers, authorities and policy of Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain. These books will be updated in line with NCFSE in future and finally will be made available in print form.

The Teachers of Veda, Sanskrit and Modern subjects in Rashtriya Adarsh Veda Vidyalaya, Ujjain and many teachers of Sanskrit and modern subjects in aided Veda Pathshalas of Pratishthan have worked for last two years tirelessly to prepare and present Sanskrit and modern subject text books in this form. I thank all of them from the bottom of my heart. Many eminent experts of the national level Institutes have helped in bringing quality in the textbooks by going through the texts from time to time. I thank all those experts and teachers of the schools. I extend my heartfelt gratitude to all my co-workers who have worked for DTP, drawing the sketches, art work and page setting.

All suggestions including constructive criticism are welcome for the improvement of the quality of the text books.

आपरितोषाद् विदुषां न साधु मन्ये प्रयोगविज्ञानम्।

बलवदपि शिक्षितानाम् आत्मन्यप्रत्ययं चेतः ॥

(Abhijnanashakuntalam 1.02)

*Until the scholars are fully satisfied about the content, presentation, attainment of objective, I do not consider this effort to be successful, because even the scholars are not fully confident in the presentation without feedback from the stakeholders.*

---

**Prof. ViroopakshaV Jaddipal**

**Secretary**

Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain

Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board, Ujjain



## FOREWORD

Keeping in mind the national objectives in the light of the National Education Policy- 2020, Maharishi Sandipani National Veda Vidya Pratishthan, established by the Government of India, provides Veda Pathshalas/Guru recognized across the country by the Maharishi Sandipani Veda Sanskrit Education Board, Ujjain (M.P.). Veda Bhushan first , second , third , fourth , fifth and Veda Vibhushan first and second years studied in student units and NCE for the students of sixth , seventh, eighth , ninth , tenth , eleventh and twelfth class in school education . R.T. And I am extremely happy to present a social science textbook as per the standards of state education boards and various published sources on Indian knowledge tradition.

The subjects included in social sciences like geography, history, political science, economics and sociology etc. provide us many ways of help in understanding the society. On the basis of this understanding, we try to make our future the best in terms of personal and social behavior. This entire world is the result of various events and changes over time, thousands and millions of years ago. This textbook of social science is definitely helpful in knowing and understanding these events, changes and results.

Most of the subjects in the social science book have been included keeping in mind the theoretical nature and usefulness of the Vedic literature, due to which the students will definitely feel Indianans and cultural pride. An effort has been made to make this book more useful for students by including various maps, pictures and updated data. From

---

time to time, guidance has been received from the Honorable Secretary in the work of making textbooks. All the teachers and teachers of Rashtriya Adarsh Ved Vidyalaya have contributed in terms of collection of topics , mantra collection, word arrangement, error correction etc. of social science textbook, especially Mr. Ayush Shukla and Mr. Abhijeet Singh Rajput ji as well as social teachers of various schools. I have also received unprecedented support from science teachers Mr. Vijendra Singh Hada, Mr. Vikram Basniwal, Mr. Anil Sharma, Mr. Mukesh Kushwaha, Mr. Laxmikant Mishra, Mr. Amresh Chandra Pandey, Mr. Narendra Singh, Mrs. Anupama Trivedi and Mrs. Neha Maithil. Along with all this, the work of Mrs. Kiran Parmar in typing work has been highly commendable. We heartily thank you all for this cooperation.

Our effort has been to make the Social Science text book as useful as possible for the Vedic students, because Social Science being a dynamic subject, there is always a need for modification and addition to the content in the Social Science book. In this context, suggestions from respected teachers, subject experts and scholars interested in social sciences are always welcome.

Thanks and regards

Date-

**Dr. Prakash Prapan Tripathi**

**Ravindra Kumar Sharma**

---

## CONTENTS

Order Number	Chapter Of Name	Page Number
	<b>Geography</b>	
<b>Chapter – 1</b>	Major Resources of India Part-1 (Soil and Water)	<b>2-10</b>
<b>Chapter – 2</b>	Major Resources of India Part – 2 (Forests and Wildlife)	<b>11-19</b>
<b>Chapter – 3</b>	Major Resources of India Part – 3 (Minerals & Energy)	<b>20-28</b>
<b>Chapter – 4</b>	Manufacturing Industries in India	<b>29-38</b>
	<b>History</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Chapter – 5</b>	Major Philosophies of India	40-53
<b>Chapter – 6</b>	Industrial Revolution	<b>54-61</b>
<b>Chapter – 7</b>	National Movement and Independence in India	<b>62-70</b>
<b>Chapter – 8</b>	Building a Landlocked World	<b>71-76</b>
<b>Chapter – 9</b>	50 years of post-independence India	<b>77-85</b>
	<b>POLITICAL SCIENCE</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>Chapter – 10</b>	Democracy	<b>87-93</b>
<b>Chapter – 11</b>	Indian Constitution (Federalism, Fundamental Rights, Directive Principles and Fundamental Duties)	94-102
<b>Chapter – 12</b>	Public Welfare Schemes in India	<b>103-109</b>
	<b>Economics</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>Chapter – 13</b>	Sector of Indian Economy and its Infrastructure	<b>111-120</b>
<b>Chapter –14</b>	Development and Consumer Awareness	<b>121-126</b>
<b>Chapter –15</b>	Globalization and Financial System in India	<b>127-134</b>
<b>Chapter –16</b>	India's current problems and efforts to solve	<b>135-140</b>
	<b>Model Question Paper</b>	

---

# Veda Bhushan 5th Year SOCIAL SCIENCE



# Chapter-1

## Major Resources of India Part-1

### (Soil and Water)

**In this chapter:** meaning of resource, importance of resource, types of resources, effects of over exploitation of resources, development of resources, planning, conservation, soil resources, water resources, problems and conservation of water resources.

**Meaning of resource:** Everything available in our environment that we can use to fulfill our needs, that we have the technology to make and whose use is culturally acceptable is called a 'resource.' For example, land, water, air, forests, minerals, etc. are all forms of resources. Resources are essential for human life and development. Without resources, no one can develop industry and agriculture. By using natural resources, man has created and developed housing, means of transport and communication, industries, etc. These natural and man-made resources are essential for the development of human beings. It is clear from the following mantra of Atharvaveda that land is the oldest natural resource, which has been used by humans since ancient times in the form of agriculture, mining, residence etc. गिरयस्ते पर्वता हिमवन्तोरण्यं ते पृथिवि स्योनमस्तु। बभ्रुं कृष्णां रोहिणीं विश्वरूपां ध्रुवां भूमिं पृथिवीमिन्द्रगुप्ताम्. अजीतोऽहतो अक्षतोऽध्यक्षां पृथिवीमहम्॥ (Atharva.12.1.11) That is, by preserving the land that is habitable and used for various purposes it becomes pleasant. O land! May your hills, snow-capped mountains, forests, rich brown soil, arable black soil, fertile red soil and trees in many forms provide shelter for all and remain invincible and intact on the stable land.

**Importance of Resources-** Resources make human life simple and pleasant. Since ancient times, man has been completely dependent on nature. Any element of nature is considered a resource only when it is helpful in fulfilling human needs. Often, resources are natural. Human beings transform resources in order to make them fit for use. Human beings are also resources. An educated, skilled, and healthy human being is a valuable resource for any country. Today, the countries in the world that have more resources are considered more advanced and prosperous. That is why resources are very important in our lives.

In this chapter, we will understand the types of resources and study soil and water resources in detail under natural resources.

**Types of Resources** - Resources are of the following types-

1. Based on Origin
2. Based on Exhaustibility
3. Based on ownership
4. Based on the status of development

**1. On the basis of origin-** On the basis of origin, there are two types of resources-

- Biological Resources
- Abiotic Resources



- **Biological Resources-** The resources that contain organisms (life) or are derived from the biosphere are called biological resources. Such as human beings, vegetation, livestock, birds, fish, coal etc.
  - **Abiotic Resources-** Those resources which do not contain organisms (life) i.e. those which are inanimate are called abiotic resources. Such as metals, air, water, stone, land etc.
2. **On the basis of Exhaustibility** - There are two types of resources on the basis of Exhaustibility-
- Renewable Resources
  - Non-renewable resources
- **Renewable Resources-** Resources that can be renewed or regenerated by physical, chemical or mechanical process are called **Renewable resources**, such as- animals, solar energy, wind energy, water etc.
  - **Non-renewable resources-** The resources which cannot be used a second time after being used once and which cannot be renewed or regenerated, are called non-renewable resources. Such as rocks, soil, minerals, fossil fuels, metals etc. Some of these resources are recyclable but resources like metals and fossil fuels are non-recyclable.
3. **On the basis of ownership-** On the basis of ownership, there are four types of resources-
- **Personal Resources**
  - **Community Resources**
  - **National Resources**
  - **International Resources**
- **Personal Resources-** The resources over which a person has the right or ownership are called personal resources. Such as a person's property, health, efficiency, etc.
  - **Community Resources-** The resources over which society has authority or ownership are called community resources. Such as wells, stepwell, parks, crematoriums, pastures, ponds, etc.
  - **National Resources-** The resources over which the government has authority or ownership are called national resources. Such as - wealth of the nation, military power, patriotism of citizens etc.
  - **International Resources-** The resources which are controlled by international institutions are called international resources. For example, any country has a right to the sea up to 200 nautical miles from its coastline. Beyond 200 nautical miles, the maritime sector is an international resource.
4. **Depending on the level of development-** Depending on the level of development, there are four types of resources-
- Potential Resources
  - Developed Resources
  - Reserves

- Accumulated corpus
- **Potential Resources-** Those resources which are not being used due to a lack of technology and planning but have the potential to be used in the future, are called future resources. Such as generating electricity after the construction of the dam, solar energy and wind energy.
- **Developed Resources-** The resources that have been surveyed and whose quality and quantity of use have been determined are called developed resources.
- **Reserves-** The resources that are available but lack the technology for their proper use are called reserves. Such as hydrogen fuel.
- **Accumulated corpus-** Until the properties of a substance and the necessary uses required to meet human needs are known, that substance is called a secret resource. For example, the properties and uses of Petroleum until humans discovered it, was in the category of a secret resource. But today, the use of petroleum products has increased tremendously.

**Impact of over exploitation of resources-** Resources are very important for the existence and livelihood of human beings. But due to over-exploitation of resources by human beings, many problems have arisen. Which we can understand as follows-

1. **Depletion of resources-** Due to increasing materiality and economic prosperity in mankind, natural resources are being over-exploited, which has led to the depletion of resources.
2. **Centralization of resources-** Only a few people in the society have the right over the resources, due to which the society has been divided into two parts, poor and rich.
3. **Global Ecological Crisis-** Global and ecological (environmental) problems have arisen due to over-exploitation of resources. Such as soil degradation, increase in earth temperature, depletion of ozone layer, environmental pollution etc.

**Development, planning and conservation of resources-** It is very important to plan the use of resources to maintain all kinds of existence in life. **Sustainable development** is the development that is done without harming the environment and on the basis of the needs of the present to the future. In India, resource planning has been a major goal of the country since the first five-year plan. Many economic, social and environmental problems arise due to indiscriminate use or over-exploitation of resources. Conservation of resources is essential to avoid these problems. Resources are available in limited quantities in the world. If the indiscriminate use of these resources is not stopped, nothing will be left for the future. Due to which the existence of the human race will be in danger. Therefore, it is necessary that we conserve resources.

**Soil Resources-** The upper layer of soil found on the earth, which is formed by the combination of rocks and vegetation, is called soil. Soil is a mixture of basic

rocks and organic matter in which different types of vegetation grow when there is a suitable climate. Soil is the most important renewable natural resource. Elevation, parent shell, climate, vegetation and other organic matter are the main factors in the process of soil formation. It takes millions of years to form soil a few centimeters deep. Soil is an important component of the ecosystem. About 43% of India's land is plain, which is convenient for the development of industries and agriculture. Mountains cover 30% of the land area. These mountains are home to frequently flowing rivers that supply water for agriculture, industries, drinking water and domestic use. Plateau covers 27% of the country's land area. This plateau region is a storehouse of minerals. We get 95% of our basic necessities from land.

**Types of soil-** On the basis of the elements that determine the process of soil formation, the color of the soil, formation, depth, age and chemical and physical properties, 6 types of soil are found in India- 1. Alluvial Soil 2. Black soil 3. Red-yellow soil 4. Laterite Soil 5. Desert Soil 6. Forest soil or mountain soil.

- 1. Alluvial Soil-** This soil is formed from silt and sand deposits brought in by rivers originating from the Himalayas and peninsular plateaus. Different proportions of sand, silt and clay are found in alluvial soil. There are two types of alluvial soil based on age- 1. Khadar 2. Bangar. The new soil brought by the rivers is called **Khadar**. On the other hand, where the flood water of the rivers does not reach or the deposit of new soil is known as **Bangar**. Intensive agriculture is carried out in areas with alluvial soil. Alluvial soil is suitable for wheat, rice, sugarcane, pulses, oilseeds etc. This soil is found in the wide valley areas of Ganga, Yamuna, Sutlej and Brahmaputra rivers and in the border areas of the southern peninsula. This soil is very fertile, therefore the mass density of these areas is high.
- 2. Black soil-** This soil has been formed due to the dissolution of basalt lava of the volcano. The black color of this soil is due to the compounds of aluminum and iron present in it. Soil particles are very fine, hence its capacity to hold moisture is high. When it loses its moisture in summer, wide and deep cracks develop in it due to which air gets mixed well in it. Black soil is suitable for cotton. It is found in the states of Gujarat, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, etc.
- 3. Red-yellow soil-** The red color of this soil is due to the presence of iron in the igneous and metamorphic rocks and the yellow color is due to hydration in them. It has developed in areas with low rainfall on the radiant igneous rocks. This soil is less fertile due to lack of organic matter. This soil is suitable for rice, maize, groundnut, tobacco and fruits. This soil is found in the plateau part of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Goa, South-Eastern, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa, and Meghalaya.
- 4. Laterite Soil-** Laterite soil is formed in hot and humid climatic conditions. It is not very useful for plants due to its acidic nature. Red laterite soil of Kerala, Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh is more suitable for cashew crop. Apart from

this, it is found in high and heavy rainfall areas of Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Assam, Orissa and Meghalaya.

**5. Desert Soil-** This soil is saline. Lack of humus, sandy and rocky soil, lack of humidity, etc. are the characteristics of desert soil. Due to lime below the surface of desert soil, the amount of calcium in it increases. Due to its thick particles, it has very little moisture holding capacity. Due to lack of irrigation, it remains barren, in which moong, moth, millet etc. are harvested. Desert soil is found in western Rajasthan, Saurashtra, Kutch, western Haryana and southern Punjabi regions.

**6. Forest soil or mountain soil -** This soil has more forests, due to which there is an excess of humus in this soil. Due to the excess of humus, this soil is not too good for agriculture. This soil is not considered a full-grown soil but it is fertile in the lower areas of the river valleys. This soil is considered suitable for tea, apple and pear. This soil is found in Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh and Uttarakhand.

**Soil Erosion-** Nutrients for vegetation and agriculture are found only in the soil. Removal of the upper layer of soil (soil) from its original place due to the activities of water, wind, humans, animals etc. is called '**soil erosion**'. When soil is eroded, the land becomes degraded.

**Causes of soil erosion-** The following reasons are mentioned: destruction of forests by humans, excessive animal grazing, shifting cultivation by tribals, wind erosion, unscientific farming, etc.

**Losses from soil erosion-**

1. Due to soil erosion, vegetation is destroyed, which leads to a long period of drought.
2. There is an adverse impact on additional sources of water and difficulty in irrigation.
3. Erosion of high-quality soil has adverse effects on agricultural production and also decreases cultivable land.

**Soil conservation-** There are indications of land conservation in Vedic literature -पूर्वीरस्य निषिद्धो मर्त्येषु पुरु वसूनि पृथिवी बिभर्ति। इन्द्राय द्याव ओषधीस्तापो रयिं रक्षन्ति जीरयो वनानी॥ (ऋ. 3.51.5) That is, the king should protect the earth, holding money, medicine, water, etc. It is clear from this that Indian sages have been conscious of the conservation of the earth since ancient times. Today, due to the increasing population, there has been large-scale destruction of natural resources. Where the problem of the destruction of many natural resources has arisen. Therefore, it is necessary to stop the destruction through soil conservation. The following measures can be taken for soil conservation:

1. Growing crops in terraced fields in hilly areas.
2. Preventing drainage by forming embankments in the fields.
3. Prevent soil erosion by planting trees to decrease wind speed.
4. Collection of water flowing in mountain slopes and high and low areas.

## 5. Development of pastures in rural areas.

**Water Resources-** Water is a valuable natural resource. Water fulfills our basic needs. Water is the basis of life on earth. The share of water in the bodies of flora and fauna is predominant. The human body consists of 70% water. Four types of waters are mentioned in the Rigveda: या आपो दिव्या उत वा स्रवन्ति खनित्रिमा उत वा याः स्वयंजाः । समुद्रार्था याः शुचयः पावकास्ता आपो देवीरिह मामवन्तु. ऋग्वेद (7/49/2)

1. Divya Aap - Water obtained from the sky.
2. Samudrārtha Aap - Water flowing in rivers and streams.
3. Khanitrima Aap - Water obtained by mining.
4. Swayamja Aap - Groundwater released from the ground.

In the Brihat Samhita, the formulas for knowing ground water have been given, which are useful for society. In these sutras, the formula for acquiring knowledge of groundwater with the help of a cane tree is given. - यदि वेसतोऽम्बुरहिते देशे हस्तैस्त्रिभिस्ततः पश्चात् । सार्धे पुरुषे तोयं वहति शिरा पश्चिमा तत्र ॥ चिह्नमपि चार्धपुरुषे मण्डूकः पाण्डुरोऽथ मृत् पीता । पुटभेदकश्च तस्मिन् पाषाणो भवति तोयमधः ॥ (बृहत्संहिता 54.6-7) that is, in a waterless area, water will be found three cubits (4.5 feet or 53 inches) to the west of the cane tree at a depth of one and a half males (one man equals five hands or 7.5 feet). The basis of this conclusion is the western vein, which flows from the meeting place of water below the ground. It has been further said that on digging a male, a frog of light-yellow color is found, then the soil of yellow color, followed by a stone with flat levels. Water will be found under this flat layered stone. According to these two sources, water is available at a depth of 11.25 feet.

1. **Surface water-** Water on the earth's surface is obtained by rain and melting of snow. In Rigveda, the water cycle indicates the hydrological cycle. इन्द्रो दीर्घाय चक्षस आ सूर्यं रोहयदिवि. विगोभिरद्रिमैरयत ॥ (ऋ.1.7.3) means That God created the sun from which the world was illuminated and from the heat of this sun, the water evaporates and converts into clouds above and then comes to the earth in the form of rain. Some of the rainwater flows and collects in ponds and lakes. Most of the water flows into the rivers, which later reach the ocean, which is called surface water. About 60 percent of the total surface water in India flows through the three major rivers, the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra. Brahmaputra and Ganga are the eighth and tenth largest rivers in the world, respectively.
2. **Ground water-** Some part of rainwater is absorbed by the land, which we call groundwater. The dried-up water gets collected by reaching the impermeable rocks below the surface. In Atharvaveda- शनः खनित्रिमा आपः Water extracted by digging, that is, water, gives us happiness. This water is brought to the earth's surface through wells and tube wells, which we use to irrigate agricultural land, horticulture, industry, etc. Often, the distribution of ground water in the country is very uneven. The amount of ground water is high in the flat plains. In southern states like Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Tamil Nadu,

Karnataka etc., due to impenetrable rocks, very little rainwater is absorbed by the land.

3. **Atmospheric water-** Some part of rainwater returns to the atmosphere by becoming steam, which is called atmospheric water. Due to being in water vapor form, this water is not used.
4. **Oceanic waters-** The west, east and south of the country are the Arabian Sea, the Bay of Bengal and the Indian Ocean respectively. This water is mainly used in water transportation and fisheries.

**Use of water-** Water is mainly used for drinking, food making, cleaning and irrigation, hydropower generation, industry, transport, entertainment etc. Most of the water is used for irrigation. The practice of irrigation in the country has been going on since ancient times. There are three major means of irrigation-

1. Canals, 2. Wells and tube wells, 3. Pond.

**Water resources problems and conservation-** The problem of water resources is related to the availability, use, quality and management of resources. Water was sufficiently available for irrigation and industries in India at the time of independence, but now, due to population growth in the country, water is decreasing in all areas. Water resources are often lacking in the summer season all over South India, while there is no shortage of water in the rainy season. The status of power supply is also dependent on the availability of water resources.



Fig. 1.1 Johd

For these reasons, judicious use, conservation, and management of water resources are essential. The following three steps are necessary for the conservation of water resources:

- Preventing rainwater runoff by proper harvesting.
- Scientific management of all river water storage areas, big and small.
- Protecting water from pollution

Proper management and collection of rainwater is called rainwater conservation.

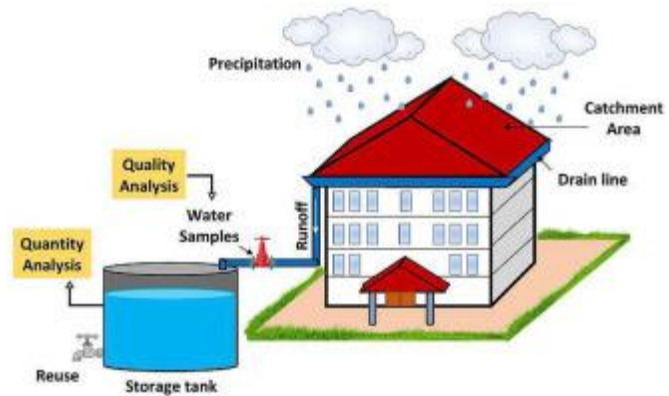


Figure- 1.2 Tanka

During the monsoon period, water can be collected in dams, ponds, lakes or small water sources and used for the rest of the period. In Indian culture, water is considered the nectar of life. This thought has inspired the rulers, honours-money lenders and local citizens of the country have built wells, ponds and lakes in villages and cities. According to Kautilya's Artha shastra, Chandragupta Maurya built Sudarshan Lake, which is in Junagadh, Gujarat. Various gates and dams were built by the Chalukya rulers

of South India. In which rainwater was collected and later irrigated.

In ancient India, along with excellent aquatic constructions, water conservation and storage structures are also found. At that time people had deep knowledge about rainfall pattern and soil properties. He had developed several methods of rainwater, ground water, river water and flood water harvesting as per the local ecological conditions and their requirements. In the hilly and mountainous areas, people have created irrigation resources in the fields by diverting vessels like 'Gul' or 'Kul' (Western Himalayas) from the stream of the river. In the floodplains in West Bengal, people used to build flood water vessels to irrigate their fields. Pits were built to conserve rainwater in dry and semi-arid areas, so that the soil could be irrigated and the protected water could be used for farming. In many States, rooftop rainwater harvesting/conservation method is still adopted for drinking water collection.



**Fig- 1.3 Rooftop rain water harvesting**

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which of the following is a natural resources-  
 A. Water                      B. Land                      C. Forest                      D. All These
2. Which type of soil is suitable for cashew crop?  
 A. Laterite                      B. Desert                      C. Kali                      D. Alluvial
3. Which of the following is the cause of land degradation-  
 A. Mining                      B. Excessive Animal Husbandry  
 C. Soil Erosion                      D. All These
4. Which of these a non-renewable resource?  
 A. Solar Energy                      B. Wind Energy  
 C. Fossil Fuel                      D. Water

### Fill in the blanks-

1. On the bases of age alluvial soil of.....types (2/4)
2. Vegetation, Livestock .....is a Resources. (Biotic/Abiotic)
3. The resources which are the government called..... resources.  
 (Community/National)
4. ....of the country is platter  
 (27% / 30%)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Judicious use of resources is called conservation. (True/False)
2. Computer is a natural resource. (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Alluvial Soil   | A. Tamil Nadu, Karnataka         |
| 2. Red Yellow Soil | B. Western Rajasthan, Saurashtra |
| 3. Desert Soil     | C. North Rajasthan, Punjab       |

### Very short answer question-

1. What is resource?
2. What do you mean by soil erosion?
3. What do you understand by soil conservation?
4. What percent of India's area is plain?
5. Where is desert soil found?
6. What are the sources of ground water?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. How many types of resources are there based on origin? Describe.
2. What are the characteristics of black soil?
3. Resources are mainly divided into how many sections? Describe.
4. What is resource planning? Explain resource planning in India.
5. Why is rainwater harvesting necessary?
6. Highlight the problems and conservation of water resources.

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What is soil? Describe the soils found in India.
2. What are the major sources of water resources? What is the importance of water resources in human life?
3. Why is water conservation important? Describe the remedies.

### Project Work-

1. List the natural resources found in your vicinity.
2. Map work





## Chapter-2

### Major Resources of India Part - 2 (Forests and Wildlife)

**In this chapter-** Forest Resources, Types of Forests in India, Importance of Forests in Indian Economy, Conservation of Forests in India, Conservation of Forest Resources, Project for Endangered Wild animals, Wild animals in India, Project Tiger.

Vedic students! Apart from humans, many types of organisms live on the earth. These range from microscopic organisms to giant elephants and enormous whales. As a habitat for diverse species, it is endowed with earthly biodiversity. Together they form a complete and complex ecosystem, and depend on its various elements for their existence. For example, the air in which we breathe, the water that we drink and the soil that produces grains. Plants, animals and microorganisms reproduce them. Forests are the primary producers on which all other organisms depend. They have an important role in the ecosystem.

**Forest Resources-** The vast area of the earth in which trees are predominant as natural vegetation is called forest. Forests are an invaluable gift of nature. In Vedic literature, in the following mantra of the Rigveda, forest resources are described as valuable for human life.

शतं वो अम्बधामानिसहस्रमुतवोरुहः। अधाशतकत्वोयूयमिममेअगदंकृत॥

ओषधीःप्रतिमोदध्वंपुष्पावतीःप्रसूवरीः। अश्वाइवसजित्वरीर्वीरुधःपारयिष्णवः॥ (ऋ.10.97.2-3)

That is, vegetation is considered to be energetic, invigorating and powerful and plants are considered as deities. That is, they are important natural resources.

The report released by the Ministry of Environment, Government of India in 2019 provides information on forest area, tree cover, mangrove area, and growing stock inside and outside forest areas, carbon emitted in forests, forest type and biodiversity and forest cover at different slopes and elevations. The same report said that the forest area or tree cover in India is 8, 07,276 square kilometers, which is 24.56% of the total area of the country. In India, 33% of the total land area should be forested. The states with the highest forest cover in India are Maharashtra, Arunachal Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha, Manipur, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland.

**Types of Forests in India-** Due to the diversity of climate and ground inequalities in India, different types of forests are found. No other country in the world has so much diversity in its forests. According to the Botanical Survey of India, there are about 47,000 species of trees and plants in our country, there are 5000 species that are found only in India. On the basis of distribution in India, the following types of forests are found -

1. **Evergreen forests-** These forests are found in those parts of the country, where the average rainfall is more than 200 cm and the annual average temperature is around 24°C. In these forests, mainly rubber, mahogany, ebony, iron wood, purple mango, palm etc. trees or bamboo and many types of vines are found. The density of trees is high. These forests are found on the western slopes of the Western Ghats, Andaman and Nicobar Islands and in north-eastern India, in the Bengal, Assam, and Meghalaya and Terai regions.
2. **Deciduous or monsoon forest -** These forests are found in areas where there is an average annual rainfall of 100 cm to 200 cm. The major trees in these forests are Sal, Teak, Neem, Chandan, Rosewood, Amla, Mulberry, Ebony, Mango, Rosewood, Bons etc. In India, these forests are found in the lower part of the northern mountain region, Vindhya and Satpura Mountains, Chota Nagpur and Assam Hills, the southern part of the Eastern Ghats and eastern part of the Western Ghats.
3. **Dry forests-** These forests are found in areas where the annual average of rainfall ranges from 50 cm to 100 cm. The major trees in these forests are acacia, neem, mango, mahua, karil, khejri etc. These trees have a high ability to tolerate water scarcity. These forests are found in western Punjab, Haryana, eastern Rajasthan and south-western Uttar Pradesh etc.
4. **Desert forests -** These forests are found in parts with less than 50 cm of rainfall. The leaves in the trees of these forests are small, and thorny. Acacia, hawthorn, rambans, khejri, ker, dates etc. are the major vegetation here. These forests are found in states like South-Western Punjab, Western Rajasthan, Gujarat, Haryana etc.
5. **Tidal forests-** At the time of low tide, the congested water in front of the sea irrigates the roots of the trees, so they are called tidal forests or swamp forests. The beautiful trees of these forests are found especially in the delta of Ganga-Brahmaputra. Other trees are palm, coconut, heritiera, Rhizophora, Solanaceae, etc. These forests are found at the estuary of peninsular rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri etc.
6. **Mountain forests-** In these forests, the leaves of the trees are dense and evergreen and the branches are covered with vines. Trees like Eugenia, Michelia and Rhododendron are found in higher parts. Broad leaf oak and chestnut at an altitude of 1000 to 2000 meters, coniferous trees at an altitude of 1500 to 3000 meters such as deodar, spruce, pine, etc. and alpine vegetation at more than 3500 meters, Juniper etc. are found at altitudes above 3500 mt. These forests are found in Mahabaleshwar in Maharashtra in southern India and Pachamadhi in Madhya Pradesh and high parts of the Himalayas.

**Importance of Forests in Indian Economy-** The forest is a national asset. From forests, we obtain habitation, water, food, climate, the ability to prevent erosion and wood. Planting trees is not only economically useful but also necessary for the purification of the environment. In the context of the economy, the importance of forests can be divided into two parts-

## 1. Direct Benefit      2. Indirect benefit

1. **Direct benefits from forests-** We get wood from forests, which is an important source of fuel. Forests provide lacquer, glue, honey, kattha, wax, bark, bamboo and numerous herbs as auxiliary produce. These are also the basic elements used as raw materials by some industries. Industries run on raw materials from forests, which have provided employment to crores of people. Forest areas are a good pasture sites where grass and leaves are available for animals. Foreign exchange is obtained by exporting lac, turpentine oil, sandalwood oil, wood products obtained from forests. Many small-scale industries are running from forest items such as tendu leaf, cane, honey, wax etc. The government earns crores of rupees as revenue from forests.
2. **Indirect benefits of forests-** Forests ensure that the nutrients in the soil do not decrease and that the soil remains fertile. Due to forests, the upper surface of the soil does not flow even in heavy rains. Gives us protection from extremes in climatic conditions. Forests reduce the velocity of water which helps in flood control. Sardar Vallabh bhai Patel had said that "if human civilization has to be protected by stopping the increasing spread of deserts, then the decay of forest wealth must be stopped." Attracting forest clouds leads to rainfall, which leads to an increase in the ground water level. If the current situation of tree erosion continues, there will be a shortage of oxygen in the atmosphere. Students! Do you know how the human being was in a crisis due to a lack of oxygen during the Corona epidemic?

**Conservation of forests in India-** Before independence, the British government in India established forest departments in every state for the care and development of forests according to the Forest Policy in 1894. The policy had two main objectives - revenue generation and conservation of forests.

### **Forest conservation in India after independence-**

1. A Central Forest Board was established in India in 1950. In which the main four points of the new policy regarding forests were-
  - Increase the area of forests to 33.3 percent.
  - Planting of new forests
  - Securing forests
  - Conduct research on forests.
2. The New Forest Policy was announced on December 7, 1988. Which had three goals –
  - Bringing stability to the environment
  - To conserve natural heritage such as animals and vegetation.
  - To meet the basic needs of the people.
3. A 20-year National Forestry Action Plan was implemented in 1999 to give effect to the National Forest Policy announced in 1988 .

Recently, on January 13, 2022, PIB Delhi released the **Forest Survey Report 2021** in which it is stated that-

- In the last two years, the total forest and tree-rich area of the country has increased by 2,261 sq. km.
- The largest forest area in the country in terms of area is in the state of Madhya Pradesh.
- The maximum increase in forest cover was recorded in Andhra Pradesh (647 sq. km), followed by Telangana (632 sq. km) and Odisha (537 sq. km).
- More than 33% of the geographical area of 17 States/UTs is covered by forests.
- The total carbon stock in the country's forest is estimated to increase by 79.4 million tons to 7,204 million tones.
- The total mangrove area in the country is 4,992 sq. km, registering an increase of 17 sq. km.

Sharing the findings of the Forest Survey, Union Minister Shri Bhupendra Yadav said that the total forest and tree-rich area of the country is 80.9 million hectares, which is 24.62 percent of the total geographical area of the country. The total forest and tree-rich area of the country has registered an increase of 2,261 sq km as compared to the assessment of the year 2019.

**Forest Resources-** Along with forests, wildlife is also important for human beings. They help to preserve the ecological balance. However, meat, animal hides, ivory, etc. which are obtained from wild animals have led to humans hunting and poaching wild animals. This has put the existence of forest animals in danger. There is a steady decrease in the number of tigers, lions, elephants, rhinoceros, etc. In the coming few years, some species of wild animals are likely to become completely extinct. Conservation of wildlife is necessary for environmental balance. The place where these forest dwellers live is found in the following mantra of Rigveda- अश्विना हरिणाविव गौराविवानु यवसम्. (ऋ. 5.78.2) That is, the habitat of animals like deer and antelope is a green grass forest.

**Measures For Conservation of Wild Animals-** The following efforts can be made to save the plight of wild animals in the forests-

- To carry out management etc. without harming the natural habitats of wild animals.
- Complete ban on hunting of wild animals.
- Establishment of Biosphere Reserve in forest areas.
- India is a biodiversity rich country.
- To develop education and awareness to change the attitude of people towards wildlife.
- To implement wildlife management schemes honestly.
- To establish National Parks/Sanctuaries, National Parks/ Sanctuaries for rehabilitation of endangered organisms.

According to the International Association for Conservation of Natural Resources, the wildlife found in India is divided into the following categories:

**Common species-** Those species which help in the activities of human beings are called normal species. It includes pets.

- **Endangered species-** Species that are likely to face extinction threat in the near future. They are called endangered species. These include the black buck, tiger, rhinoceros etc.
- **The vulnerable species-** Those species whose number is decreasing are called endangered species. If their adverse conditions are not changed, then these species will also become extinct species. Such animals include Asian buffaloes, desert foxes, brown bears of the Himalayas, Ganges river dolphins, etc.
- **Rare species-** The species which are very small in number are called rare species. Ganga Dolphin, Hornbill etc.
- **Endemic species-** The species found in a particular region are called local castes, such as Chinkara of Rajasthan, Nicobaric Pigeon, Jungle Pig and Mithun of Arunachal etc.
- **Extinct species-** Those species which have been eliminated from the earth are called extinct species, such as The Asian Cheetah, pink-headed duck, etc.

**Wildlife in India-** Different types of wildlife are found in large numbers in India. About 75,000 species of animals are found here. These include 350 mammals, 1313 birds, 408 reptiles, 197 amphibians, 2546 fish, 50,000 insects, 40,000 mollusks and other unfertilized animals. That's 13% of the world's total. Elephant is the largest animal among mammals. The one-horned rhinoceros live in the marshy areas of West Bengal and Assam. India is the only country in the world where both lions and tigers are found. The natural habitat of Indian lions is the Gir forest in Gujarat.

**Fair Plan for Endangered Wildlife-** Vedic literature has a clear explanation of public awareness about wildlife conservation. Today, this issue may seem new due to enforcement, but its roots are in the Vedas, the oldest heritage of our culture. All organisms in our environment complement each other. Due to their usefulness, the protection of all living beings is an integral part of our culture. When it is said that- तन्माता पृथिवी तत्पिता द्यौः (ऋ. 1/89/4), that is, when the earth is the mother and the sky is the father, then surely they inspire us to preserve the whole ecology. This fact has been further confirmed in the Atharvaveda - सर्वो वै तत्र जीवति गौरश्चः पुरुषः पशुः । यत्रेदं ब्रह्म क्रियते परिधिर्जीवनाय कम् ॥ (8/2/25) in this mantra, all beings are given equal right to live by God. So, they should not be subjected to violence. In India, preference was given to national parks and sanctuaries from the point of view of wildlife conservation. The first national park of India was established in 1905 AD as Kazi Ranga National Park in Assam. After independence, India had five national parks till 1970. In 1972, India passed the Wildlife Protection Act and the Tiger Project for Conservation and at the same

time, the Lion Project was started in 1972 AD. Project Tiger was started in 1973 AD. Gharial project was started in 1974 AD. Panda is the symbol of the World Wildlife Fund.

**Project Tiger-** In 1973, we came to know that there were only 1827 tigers left in the country. Their number decreased due to hunting of tigers for trade, lack of natural habitats, shortage of food items and increase in population etc. in order to increase the number of tigers and provide protection The tiger was declared as the national animal by the Government of India in 1973 **Project Tiger** was launched by the Government of India to provide protection to tigers. According to the All-India Tiger Report 2018, the number of tigers in India today is 2967.

**Jim Corbett National Park-** It was established in 1936 as a Hailey National Park for the protection of the **Bengal tiger** in Nainital district of Uttarakhand state. The park was named after the famous hunter and writer Jim Corbett. His book 'My India' became very popular.

**Ranthambore National Park-** Ranthambore was established as a sports sanctuary in Sawai Madhopur district of Rajasthan in 1955 by the Government of India and was declared a Project Tiger Reserve in 1973. Ranthambore was declared a Tiger Reserve on 1st November, 1980. The number of tigers in this park has increased.



Fig- 2.1 Ranthambore National Park

**Sundar van National Park-** Sundar van National Park is located in the Sundar van Delta region of the Ganges River in the west Bengal state of India. This area is surrounded by dense forests of mangrove. Many species of birds, reptiles and spineless organisms are also found here. It was declared a national park on May 14, 1984. Tigers are also found here.

**Sariska National Park-** Sariska National Park is located in Alwar district of Rajasthan. This sanctuary was built in 1958 and brought under Project Tiger in 1979. Spread over an area of 800 sq km in the Aravalli hills, Sariska is mainly famous for its tiger reserve.



Fig- 2.2 Sariska National Park

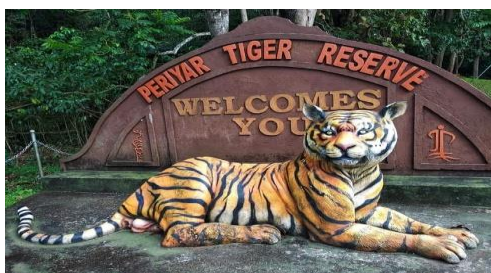


Figure- 2.3 Periyar National

**Periyar National Park-** Periyar National Park is located in the plains of the western coast of the state of Kerala. This park was established in 1950. The Tiger Reserve was started in 1978 and has also been brought under the Elephant Conservation Project in the year 1998. Wild animals like elephant, blue cow,

sambhar, bear, cheetah, leopard etc. are also found here.

**Kanha National Park-** Kanha National Park is the largest national park in Balaghat district of Madhya Pradesh. It is famous for the habitat of wild animals like tigers. Kanha National Park was established in 1955 and Kanha national park has been taken under Project Tiger Reserve in 1977. Rare reindeer are also found in this sanctuary, which are not found anywhere else in the world except here.



Fig- 2.4 Kanha National Park

**Bandhavgarh National Park-** This national park is located in Umaria district of Madhya Pradesh. It is a national park of Madhya Pradesh surrounded by 32 hills. The tiger stronghold (Bandhavgarh) is spread over an area of 448 square kilometers. It was established in 1968 and has been taken up under Project Tiger Reserve in 1993. White lions are found in it.

**Manas National Park-** This national park is located in the foothills of the Himalayas in the state of Assam, India.

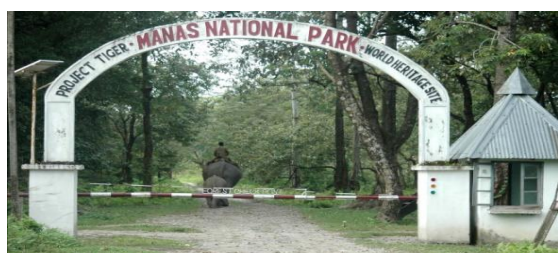


Fig- 2.5 Manas National Park

This park is famous for its rare and endangered local wildlife. Manas National Park is famous for wild buffaloes and one-horned rhinoceros. The national park was established as a sanctuary in 1928 and was taken over as a project tiger reserve in 1973. This

national park was declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1985.

Table 2.1

**Major Wildlife and Sanctuaries of India**

S.No	National Parks/Sanctuaries	State	Major
1	Gir National Park	Gujarat	Lion, wild boar, Leopard, Sāmbhar
2	Hazaribagh Wildlife Sanctuary	Jharkhand	Chital, Sambhar, Bagh, Nilgai
3	Palamu Sanctuary	Jharkhand	Elephant, Deer, Leopard
4	Jim Corbett National Park	Uttarakhand	Elephant, Tiger, Cheetah, Deer, Bear, Sambhar, Nilgai, Wild Pig
5	Chandraprabha Sanctuary,	Uttar Pradesh	Cheetah, Nilgai, Leopard, Bear
6	Doodhwa	National Park	Elephant, Tiger, Deer, spotted deer (chital) Sāmbhar

7	Vadipur Garden	Karnataka	Elephant, Cheetah, Leopard, Deer, Chital, Sambhar
8	Kaziranga National Park	Assam	One-horned rhinoceros, wild boar, buffalo, cheetah
9	Ghanapaki Vihar	Rajasthan	Sambhar, Black Deer, Wild Pig, Gharial, Siberian Crane, Cheetah, Tiger, Lion
10	Bandhavgarh National Park	Madhya Pradesh	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Bear, Chakor.
11	Kanha National Park	Madhya Pradesh	Tiger, Chital, Leopard, Sambhar, Reindeer
12	Sundarbans National Park	West Bengal	Tiger, Cheetah, Deer, Crocodile
13	Nagar Hole National Park	Karnataka	Elephant, Cheetah, Leopard, Sambhar, Bear, Chakor, Pheasant
14	Dachigram National Park	Jammu and Kashmir	Leopard, Kalabhalu, Lalbhalu, Deer
15	Panchamdhi Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	Nilgai, Chital, Deer, Bear, Wild Buffalo.
16	Periyar Sanctuary	Kerala	Sambhar, Deer, Bear, Nilgai, Wild Boar, Cheetah, Elephant, Leopard etc.
17	Nal Sarovar Sanctuary	Gujarat	Water Birds

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

- According to the Ministry of Environment, there should be ..... forests of the total land area in India.
 

A. 50%	B. 75%
C. 66%	D. 33%
- The average rainfall in the evergreen forests of India is .....
 

A. 200 Cm	B. 100 Cm	C. 50 Cm	D. 300 Cm
-----------	-----------	----------	-----------
- Species that are at risk of extinction are called .....
 

A. Rare Species	B. Vulnerable Species
C. Common Species	D. Endangered Species
- In which state Sundarbans National Park is situated .....
 

A. In Rajasthan	B. In Kerala
C. In West Bengal	D. In Jharkhand
- When was Project Tiger was launched ..... In India?
 

A. In 1990	B. In 1947	C. In 1950s	D. In 1973
------------	------------	-------------	------------



### Fill in the blanks-

1. Manas National Park ..... I in (Mizoram/Assam)
2. Tidal forests .....are also called forest. (Mountain/tidal)
3. The annual average of rainfall in any forecasts is (100-50cm/200-100cm.)

### State whether true/false-

1. About 75000 species of animals are found in India. (True/False)
2. The tiger was declared the national animal in 1975. (True/False)
3. The natural habitat of Indian lions is Gir (Gujarat). (True/False)
4. Bandhavgarh National park is in Madhya Pradesh (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                          |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Sariska National Park | A. Uttarakhand    |
| 2. Jim Corbett Garden    | B. Kerala         |
| 3. Periyar Udyan         | C. Rajasthan      |
| 4. Kanha national park   | D. Madhya Pradesh |

### Very short answer question-

1. What do you understand by forest resources?
2. What is a vegetation?
3. Which national park of India has been declared as world heritage by UNESCO?
4. In which areas are tidal forests found?
5. When was the new forest policy announced in our country?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. Why forests and wildlife are important for human life?
2. What do you know about Manas National Park?
3. Which project is going on in India for the endangered wildlife?
4. Write the main features of the ongoing forest policy in India.

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What are the direct and indirect benefits of forests in India's economy? Describe.
2. Explain the importance of forests and wildlife mentioned in Vedic literature.
3. Highlight the major national parks of India.
4. Why is wildlife conservation important? Describe the measures for wildlife conservation.

### Project-

1. Mention the customs of the areas around you, which convey the message of environmental protection.
2. Map work

## Chapter-3

### Major Resources of India Part-3 (Minerals & Energy)

**In this chapter-** mineral resources, classification of minerals, major minerals of India, conservation of minerals, energy resources, types of energy resources, energy conservation, energy conservation in Vedic literature.

Human life is completely dependent on nature. Nature has given many gifts to human beings as resources, in which mineral and energy resources are also important. Minerals and energy have played an important role in the development of our civilizations since ancient times.

In Vedic literature, the following Veda mantras are mentioned for valuable metals useful for life. यहुं पृष्ठं प्रयसा सप्तधातु । (ऋ. 4/5/6), अश्मा च मे मृत्तिका च मे गिरयश्च मे पर्वताश्च मे सिकताश्च मे वनस्पतयश्च मे हिरण्यं चमेऽयश्च मे श्यामञ्च मे लौहञ्च मे सीसञ्च मे त्रपु चमे यज्ञेन कल्पन्ताम् ॥ (यजु. 18/13) In the above Rigveda mantra, there are seven types of valuable metals and in the Yajurveda mantra of Yajurveda, all types of diamonds, soils, mountains (products derived from them), sandy areas, vegetation, gold, black iron, copper, red iron (tin and rust) and lead are the metals we need to sacrifice. This makes it clear that at that time metals were obtained by fire extraction in fire. Gold can be preserved for a long time due to a lack of erosion and oxidation. It may have been called Hiranya. Rasa Ratnakar also states- क्रमेण कृत्वाम्बुधरेण रंजितः, करोति शुल्वं त्रिपुटेन काञ्चनम् । सुवर्णं रजतं ताम्रं तीक्ष्णवंगं भुजङ्गमा लौहकं । षड्विधं तच्च यथापूर्वं तदक्षयम् ॥ In this verse, along with telling the order of the metal being Akshaya, gold is described as the most Akshaya.

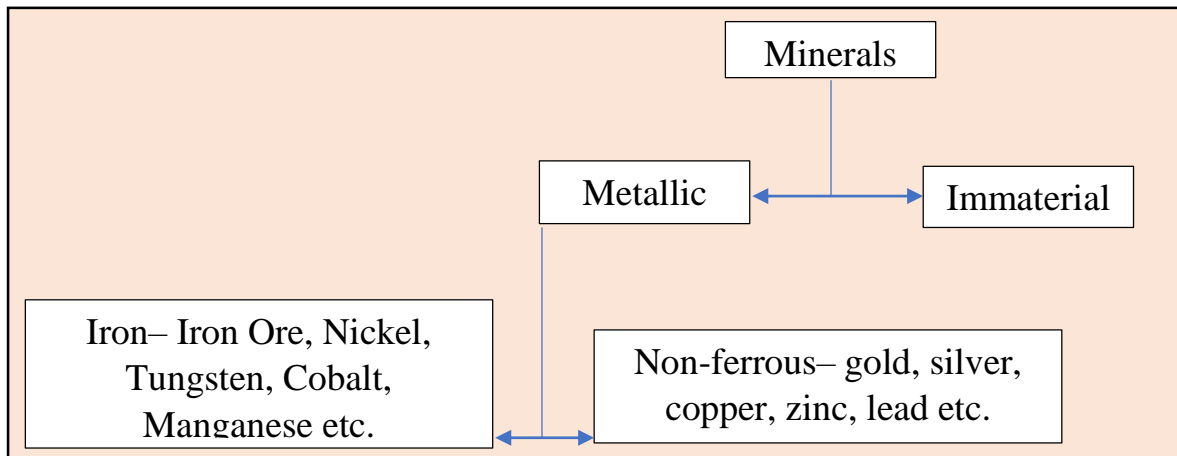


Figure- 3.1 Classification of Minerals

**Mineral Resources-** Many substances are obtained by digging very deep under the earth's surface, which is called mineral substances. But at times, these substances get mixed on the ground due to erosion of the land. Nature has stored minerals very low in the womb of the earth. Most of the minerals are found in old rocks. There are thousands of minerals on earth. When is a mineral resource

formed? Let's understand with examples. Coal was present on the earth since ancient times. But after the invention of steam power, it became a mineral resource. After that coal was mined and used on a large scale. India is counted among the mineral rich countries. Almost all types of minerals are found in India such as iron, manganese, copper, gold, silver, mica, limestone, marble, gypsum, diamond uranium, thorium, beryllium coal, natural gas, mineral oil (petroleum) etc. Classification of minerals- Minerals are divided into two classes-

**Metallic Minerals-** Metallic minerals include minerals in which sufficient amount of metal is found sufficiently. Generally, these mineral are hard and obtained in the form of ores. There are two types of iron in these minerals based on the fraction.

1. **Ferrous minerals-** Those metals in which iron content is found prominently are called ferrous metals. Such as iron, tungsten, cobalt, chromite etc.
2. **Non-ferrous minerals-** Metals in which iron content is not found are called non-ferrous metals such as gold, silver, copper, zinc, lead, tin, magnesium etc.

**Non-metallic minerals-** Non-metallic minerals include those minerals which do not contain any element of metal such as marble, limestone, rock phosphate, gypsum, mica, dolomite etc. The history of development of metals in India can be understood from the following table.

Table 3.1		
Years	Metals	Culture/ Culture Civilization
6000 AD	Gold And Copper	Harappan East
2500 AD	Silver, Lead, Arsenic And Copper An Alloy Of	Indus Valley Civilization
2000-1500 AD	Steel And Its Method Of Extraction	Vedic Era
600 AD B.C	Kalai, Mercury Alloy	Magadha Civilization
500 BC	Vutz Steel	Buddhist Period
321-184 AD	Purification Technique	Mauryan Period
319-606 AD	Commercial Production Of Zinc And Brass	Gupta Period
600- 710 AD	Abundant Production Of Steel, Iron, Mercury etc	Hun Invasion
1300-1572 AD	Brass And Bronze Casting	Mughal Period

**Major Minerals of India-** India has safe reserves of mineral resources. Almost all types of minerals are found in our country. The Chota Nagpur plateau is known as **the 'Mineral Wonder of the World'** due to its high amount of minerals. About 40% of India's mineral matter is found here. India is self-sufficient in certain minerals. Some minerals are exported after meeting the requirement. A mixture of minerals and other substances (which are obtained

from the ground) is called **ore**. Metals are separated from ore by chemical reactions.

**Iron ore-** India ranks eighth among the iron producing country of the world, but India is second only to Russia in the availability of excellent iron. There are 4 major types of iron ore found in India (magnetite, hematite, limonite, cede rite).

1. Magnetite contains 70-80% iron and is obtained from igneous rocks.
2. Hematite contains 60-70% iron and is obtained from jaundice rocks.
3. Limonite contains 40-60% iron and is obtained from sedimentary rocks.
4. Cede rite contains 10-48% iron and is obtained from a mixture of iron and carbon. It is a valuable iron mineral, as it does not contain any sulfur or phosphorus.

Magnetite is the best iron ore among the above iron ore, which has good magnetic properties. Therefore, magnetite iron is used especially in the electrical industry.

**Copper-** In India, copper is found in metamorphic rocks as ores of sulfite and charkapirite. India has 0.1% of the world's copper reserves. Copper production in the country is less than the demand, so India imports copper. Copper is the conductor of electricity, so it is mostly used in the power industry. Apart from this, copper is also used in the refrigeration industry and various other industries. Rajasthan, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Jharkhand and Karnataka are copper producing states. Khetri, Kolihan, Mandhan, Mosbani have famous copper mines.

**Bauxite-** Bauxite is an ore of aluminum. Aluminum is obtained from its purification. Aluminum is very light, strong and electrical conductor, so it is used in power industry, utensil industry, machinery industry and aircraft manufacturing. Odisha, Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Karnataka, Goa and Tamil Nadu account for 95% of the total bauxite reserves in India. Orissa ranks first in bauxite production in India.

**Manganese ore-** Manganese is added to iron to make it harder. Manganese is mainly used in making steel as well as in making paints, pesticides and bleaching powders etc. Orissa ranks first in India in manganese production. Apart from this, it is also produced in Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka and Goa.

**Mica-** Mica is found in plates, igneous and metamorphic rocks. It is red, black, yellow, green, brown or transparent and bright. Mica is a conductor of electricity and its heat tolerance power is very high, so that's why it is used in electrical work, aircraft industry, military equipment, etc. In mica production, Andhra Pradesh ranks first in the country, Rajasthan is second and Jharkhand is third. Apart from these, Bihar, Tamil Nadu and Madhya Pradesh are also mica-producing states. In Bhilwara district of Rajasthan, bricks are made from mica, which is famous all over the country.

**Lead and Zinc-** In India, 95% lead and zinc are produced in the form of galena ore from the sedimentary and sedimentary rocks of the Aravalli period. Lead is used in military materials, locomotives, etc. and zinc is used in chemical industry,

dry batteries, anti-corrosion works, brass making, etc. Rajasthan ranks first in the country in the production of lead and zinc. In addition, Andhra Pradesh, Jharkhand, Orissa and Tamil Nadu are also lead-zinc producing States.

**Limestone-** Limestone is found in sedimentary rock, which is mainly composed of various crystalline forms of calcium carbonate ( $\text{CaCO}_3$ ). It is used in cement industry and iron-melting. The major limestone producing states are Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka etc.

**Conservation of minerals-** It takes millions of years to manufacture minerals. We know that both industry and agriculture are dependent on minerals, so conservation of minerals is very important for us.

Coordinated efforts should be made for sustainable development and systematic utilization of available mineral resources.

- Every nation should understand that this resource of nature is also for the coming generations.
- Therefore, in the race for economic development, all countries should research alternative sources of minerals by limiting the exploitation of minerals and keeping a sense of universal brotherhood.
- The use of substances polluting the environment should be stopped. Alternatives to minerals should be explored.
- The United Nations should monitor the exploitation and use of minerals by every country.

**Energy Resources-** The minerals from which we get energy are called energy resources. Such as coal, natural gas, petroleum, uranium, thorium etc. The sources of energy that human beings use for their various activities are called energy resources. There are two types of sources of energy based on nature.

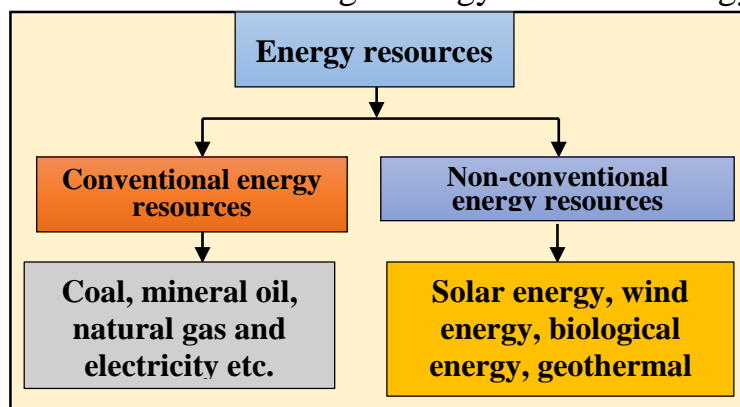


Figure- 3.2 Types of energy resources

1. **Decaying means-** Those resource which are in a limited state in the earth and getting exhaustion are ending with use. Like coal, mineral oil, natural gas etc.
2. **Renewable means-** Those resource that do not have the fear ending. Such as electricity, wind energy, solar energy etc.

The sources of energy in India have developed at a rapid pace since independence. The Government is constantly striving to make the country stronger in terms of energy sources. Without it, the industrial progress and national security of the country is impossible.

**Types of Energy Resources-** The present status of energy sources in India is as follows.

**Conventional Energy Resources-** Such resources of energy resources which have been used to obtain energy since ancient times are called conventional energy resources.

Such as: electricity, coal, wood, petroleum, natural gas etc.

**Coal-** Coal is formed by the accumulation of trees and plants buried in the ground for millions of years, so it is called fossil fuel. The amount of carbon available in coal is varied. Based on the amount of carbon, there are four types of coal-

- **Anthracite-** It is the best type of coal which contains 80 to 90% carbon. It emits less smoke.
- **Bituminous-** It contains 75 to 80% carbon.
- **Lignite-** It contains 40 to 55% carbon.
- **Peat-** This is a low type of coal, which has less than 40% carbon content. It emits the most smoke.

Coal meets a large part of the country's energy needs. It is used for obtaining energy in thermal power plants, metallurgy and industries. India ranks third in the world in terms of coal production after China and the US. In 1774, the first coal was obtained in India from Ranging (West Bengal). In terms of coal production, Jharkhand ranks first, Odisha second and Chhattisgarh third in India. Apart from this, other coal producing States are Bihar, West Bengal, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Maharashtra etc.

**Petroleum (Mineral Oil) -** The oil obtained from the organ of the earth is called **Mineral Oil**. It is also called petroleum. This oil is mixed with salty water and gases inside the earth in which water remains at the bottom, salted oil above it and gas at the top. Mineral oil is always found in sedimentary rocks. Petroleum is the second major source of energy after coal. In India, mineral oil (petroleum) was first discovered in Assam. The produced petroleum is refined to make petrol, diesel, kerosene, wax, tar, etc. Petroleum is used as a fuel in vehicles, as a lubricant in machines and in chemical industries. Maharashtra (Bombay High) produces the highest amount of petroleum in the country. In addition, petroleum is also produced in Assam, Gujarat and Rajasthan etc.

**Natural Gas-** Natural gas is an important and pollution-free resource of energy. Natural gas is considered to be environmentally friendly as it does not emit carbon dioxide when used. Natural gas comes out of petroleum wells. It contains 95 well-known hydrocarbons, which contain 80% methane. Liquefied natural gas used in households is liquefied petroleum gas (L.P.G.). It is a mixture of butane and propane, which is liquefied at high pressure and filled in cylinders. Tripura ranks first in natural gas production. Krishna-Godavari River basin, Bombay High, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Assam have huge reserves of natural gas.

**Electrical Energy-** Electricity is a more useful energy resource due to several characteristics compared to the primary sources of energy, coal, minerals oils and natural gas. Low production cost, distribution facility, pollution free, easy use and low cost of proper maintenance. It has the highest demand for domestic energy along with agriculture, industry and transport. There are mainly four sources of power generation:

1. **Thermal Power-** Thermal power in India is mainly obtained from coal and gas. In which the turbine converts mechanical energy into electrical energy to make electricity through steam produced at high pressure obtained by heating water.
2. **Hydropower-** Hydropower is a permanent source of energy. As long as the water currents flow on the earth, hydropower will continue to be obtained. Hydropower is generated by running turbines through the flow of water.
3. **Molecular Power-** The energy obtained from molecular minerals (uranium, thorium, beryllium and zirconium) through nuclear power plants is called 'molecular energy'. Molecular energy is used to produce electricity and the electricity generated from it is cheaper than the electricity produced from coal. The Atomic Energy Commission was set up in India in 1948, through which 17 nuclear power plants have been established. The country's first nuclear power plant was established at Tarapur (Maharashtra).
4. **Gas and Mineral Oil Electricity-** Gas and mineral oil are used in the production of thermal power by using gas and mineral oil as fuel.

**Non-conventional energy resources-** Energy resources that have been developed in the last few decades or are currently being developed are called non-conventional energy resources. These sources of energy are also called renewable or renewable energy (which never ends). Non-conventional energy resources include solar energy, wind energy, biomass energy and geothermal energy.

**Solar Energy-** In Vedic literature, the following mantra is found in the context of solar energy under Rigveda- "विद्युतद्वस्ता अभिघ्न" (ऋ. 8/7/5) In the above mantra, Kanva Rishi of Rigveda says that energy is constantly obtained from the Sun. That is, the rays of the sun are constantly everywhere.

The energy obtained from the heat received from the sun is called solar energy. Solar energy (sunlight) is converted into electrical energy by photovoltaic technology. Solar energy is an energy resource that will never end. Solar energy is used in water heating, food making, solar cookers, solar heaters, power generation, etc. India is located in the tropical region, so there is huge potential for the use of solar energy here.

**Wind Energy-** Wind energy refers to the generation of electricity by running windmills. There is huge potential for the development of wind energy in India, especially in western Rajasthan and coastal areas. The largest wind power farm in the country is located from **Nagarcoil to Madurai** in the southern state of Tamil Nadu. Windmills have also been set up in western Rajasthan and are

working to generate electricity. Apart from this, wind energy is also being produced in Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, and Lakshadweep.

**Biogas-** The gas that is made by decomposition of organic compound like dung, leaves of plants, shrubs, agricultural waste, etc. is called biogas. Its thermal capacity is higher than kerosene. In villages, biogas plants are known as cow dung plants because animal dung is primarily used. The **Gobar gas** plant provides biogas as well as advanced quality fertilizer (organic manure) to the farmers. Biogas is used as a fuel and as energy in domestic and agricultural operations.

**Geothermal Energy-** The electricity that is generated from the internal temperature of the land is called geothermal energy. Where the temperature of the land is high, the underground water becomes so hot that it evaporates and rises upward from the surface of the earth. By running a turbine from this vapor, electrical energy is generated. From this steam by driving a turbine, two projects for harnessing geothermal energy in Puga Valley in Ladakh and Parvati Valley near Manikaran in Himachal Pradesh have been taken up on a pilot basis in India.

In addition to the above sources of non-conventional energy, tidal energy is also used in India.

**Energy Conservation-** Under Vedic literature, the following mantra of Atharvaveda states that punishment should be given to those who destroy energy resources. "अग्ने यते तपस्तेन प्रतितप" (Atharva. 2/19/1) i.e. the importance of fire (energy) conservation and punishment for those who destroy the resource. Heat and energy is given by the fire that causes you harm. In the present economy, the resources of power are considered as **oxygen** (प्राणवायु). Just as the human body dies in the absence of air, similarly various components of the economy- agriculture, industry, transport, trade, etc. cannot operate without energy resources.

Therefore, it is necessary to conserve the energy resources available in the country so that the energy needs of human beings are always met. Energy resources should be used properly, so that humans continue to get energy in the future and the environment remains unpolluted. The following measures are necessary to conserve energy resources-

1. Limit the production of energy based on decaying sources.
2. Rapid development of renewable sources of energy.
3. Ensure proper distribution of energy produced in the country so that there is no loss of energy.
4. Energy resources should be properly utilized and public awareness should be given priority for this.
5. Energy production from pollution-free energy sources should be developed.

Therefore, we can understand that resources are not only a means to meet individual needs, but they are also the basis of all-round prosperity of the entire nation. So, we should conserve resources. In short, industrial development in any



country or region depends on the mineral and energy resources found there. Minerals and mining activities not only generate employment opportunities but they also provide raw materials for industries. On the other hand, availability of energy accelerates development. We need to understand that most of the resource is non-renewable. Therefore, we should search for non-traditional new resources using them judiciously and equitably.

**Energy conservation in Vedic literature-** In the Vedic thought tradition, energy is called Agni (vaishvanar), that is, the energy that is going to keep the world engaged in work. This is the main factor in the creation of creation. In the first hymn of Rigveda, Vaishvanar Agni (energy) is worshiped. अग्निमीळे पुरोहितम् . (ऋ. 1/1/1), अग्निर्जागार तमृचः कामयन्तेऽग्निर्जागार तमु सामानि यन्ति. अग्निर्जागार तमयं सोम आह तवाहमस्मि सख्ये न्योकाः ॥ (Rig. 5/44/15) Propounding the importance of fire In the above mantra, the one who keeps fire awake attains the knowledge, knowledge and pleasures of Samaveda and Soma considers him as his brother. Three forms of fire in have been despaired Vedic thought. Earthly fire i.e. earth fire, space fire i.e. local electric fire and terrestrial fire is called solar fire. सूर्यो नो दिवस्यातु वातो अन्तरिक्षात्. अग्निर्नः पार्थिवेभ्यः. (Rig.10/158/1) o space That is fire protect us from space disturbances.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

- Which of the following is Non-ferrous metal .....?
 

A. Tungsten	B. Cobalt
C. Iron	D. Silver
- Which of the following is caused the wonder house of mineral of the word?
 

A. Orissa	B. Karnataka
C. Rajasthan	D. Nagpur Plateau
- Bauxites the ore of which metal-
 

A. Copper	B. Aluminum	C. Gold	D. Lead
-----------	-------------	---------	---------
- Where was coal first obtained in India-
 

A. Raniganj	B. Singhbhum
C. Hazari Bagh to	D. Ranchi
- Which of the following is a Non-conventional energy resource?
 

A. Electricity	B. Natural Gas
C. Wind Energy	D. Coal
- Which of the the following .....is Wind energy-
 

A. Developed Resources	B. Potential Resources
C. Stored	D. Accumulated Funds

### Fill in the blanks-

- First nuclear power Plant is located at..... (Tarapur/Pokhran)
- Hardening by adding manganese are to iron )
- Mica brick ..... it is made in. (Bhilwara/Jamshedpur)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Anthracite coal is the best type of coal. (True/False)
2. Biogas is made from dung, leaves of trees and plants, agricultural waste. (True/False)
3. Electricity is a conventional energy resource. (True/False)
4. The atomic energy commission in India was set up in 1948 (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| 1. Mica    | A. Jharkhand      |
| 2. Copper  | B. Andhra Pradesh |
| 3. Coal    | C. Rajasthan      |
| 4. Bauxite | D. Orissa         |

### Very short answer question-

1. What is mineral?
2. How many types of iron ore are found in India?
3. What is a non-metallic mineral?
4. Name any two energy minerals.
5. How is coal produced?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What do you understand by energy minerals, they are divided into how many classes? Describe.
2. What is a metallic mineral? Explain with examples.
3. Highlight non-conventional energy resources.
4. How many types of coal are there? Give a brief description.
5. Tell us about wind energy? Where is the wind power farm located in India?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What are minerals and how many types are there? Describe.
2. What is energy resource? How many types of energy resources are there? Describe with a examples

### Project-

1. Show energy plants in the map of India.
2. Draw a picture of the windmill.

## Chapter - 4

### Manufacturing Industries in India

**In this chapter-** manufacturing, skill development, classification of industries, beginning of modern industries in India, importance of manufacturing, impact of industrial pollution on human life.

**Manufacturing-** We get many items directly from nature to meet various needs in our daily lives, and humans' use raw materials to produce items according to the need through labor, power and technology. For example, utensils made from clay or metal, molasses or sugar from sugarcane etc. The production of large quantities of goods by converting raw materials into valuable products is called **manufacturing** or **goods manufacturing** and production units are called **industry**. India's industries have been at an advanced stage since ancient times. Our Vedic literature describes the evolving nature of industries such as metals, textiles, gold jewelry and shipping. In Atharvaveda, the economic condition of craftsmen and workers is described as being good, they are called **पुरुदमासः (7/73/1)** In the Vedas, information about 140 types of small and big businesses is found. In the following mantra of Rigveda, different types of work (industries) are mentioned- कारुहं ततो भिषगुपलप्रक्षिणी नना । नानाधियो वसूयवोज्नु गा इव तस्थिमेन्द्रायेन्दो परि स्रव ॥ (ऋ. 9/112/3) That is, I am a craftsman, my father is a physician and my mother runs a mill. It is clear from this that many members of the same family used to do different types of work. Cotton fabrics, pottery and bronze sculptures found in the excavation of The Indus Civilization and the anti-corrosion iron pillars located in Mehrauli (Delhi) are indicative of Indian ancient industrial development. From this, we can understand that India was famous in the world for its gold birds. But due to the advent of the British and their exploitative production policies, cottage and small industries, which were called the backbone of the Indian economy, were destroyed.

Industry is an important link in the fundamental pillars of the current economy. In the present era, economic development is dependent on industrial development. Industries create jobs, production leads to trade and allied economic components which makes the nation strong. This gives impetus to the modern economy, but the Government of India is constantly taking positive steps to meet the constraints of technical and capital shortage in industrial progress.

**Skill Development-** At present, it is planned to implement the curriculum of vocational education in various fields from the school level. Which is called **skill development scheme**. The main objective of this scheme is to provide employment opportunities to the youth at the local level immediately after receiving education. Under this, along with entrepreneurship skill development, specialized skills related to the professions of electronics, electrical, food processing etc., which enable the trainees to start their own venture and get

employment are also acquired. Therefore, the Government has launched programmes like Entrepreneurship Development Programme (EDP), Entrepreneurship Skill Development Programme (ESDP), Vocational Skill Development Programme (BSDP), Industrial Motivating Campaign (IMC), Vocational and Educational Training etc.

**Classification of Industries-** Industries can be classified on the basis of size, ownership and raw materials on some specific basis-

**1. Based on size-** The size of the industries means the capital invested in it, the number of workers, the amount of production, the consumption of electricity, etc. Based on size, the following categories of industries are:

- **Cottage Industries-** Industries which are run by craftsmen with the help of less capital and labor at their home are called cottage or domestic industries. Basket making, mat making, sweater making, pickle making, pottery and idols, making wooden toys and tools, making ropes etc. are examples of cottage industry.

- **Small scale industries-** Industries in which 10 to 100 workers do construction work with some machines, capital, labor, etc. are called small scale industries. Matchbox industry, furniture industry, brick industry, dyeing-printing industry etc. are examples of small-scale industry.

- **Large Industries-** Industries which require more capital, labor, high level of technology and electricity are called large industries. Industries like cotton textiles, cement, iron and steel, automobiles, sugar production etc. are examples of large-scale industry.

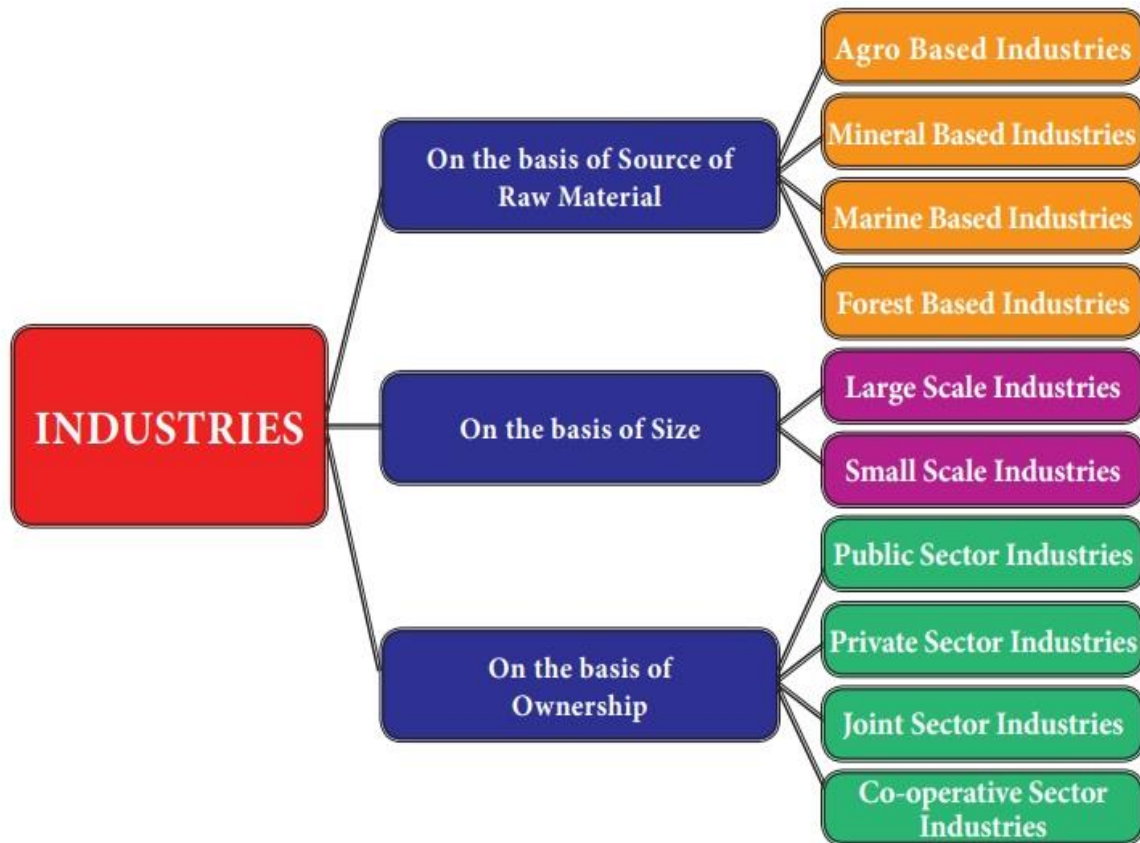
**2. On the basis of ownership-** On the basis of ownership, industries are divided into the following categories:

- **Private Sector Industries-** All industries which are owned and operated by one or more groups of persons are called private sector industries. Such as Ambuja Cement, Bajarang Dal Mill, etc.

- **Public Sector Industries:** The industries which are owned and operated by the government called public sector industries. Such as Hindustan Aeronautics Limited, Bharat Heavy Electrical Limited (BHEL), Steel Authority of India Limited (SAIL) etc.

- **Joint Sector Industries:** Those industries which are run with the joint efforts of the government and the private sector are called joint sector industries. Such as Oil India Limited (OIL), Maruti Udyog Limited etc.

- **Industries in the co-operative sector-** Those industries which are owned and operated by suppliers of raw materials or workers or both are called cooperative sector industries. These industries have a combined fund of resources and the profit-loss sharing is also proportional. Anand Milk Union Limited, Saras Dairy etc. are examples of cooperative sector industries.



**Fig- 4.1 Classification of Industries**

**3. On the basis of raw materials-** On the basis of raw materials, industries are divided into the following categories-

- **Agro-based industries-** Those industries in which agricultural products are used as raw materials are called agro-based industries. Such as food processing, vegetable oil, cotton textiles, dairy products, leather industry, sugar industry etc.
- **Sea based industries-** Those industries in which products obtained from seas and oceans are used as raw materials are called sea-based industries. Such as seafood processing industry, fish oil manufacturing industry etc.
- **Mineral based industries-** Those industries in which mineral ores are used as raw materials are called mineral based industries. Such as iron-steel industry, cement industry, aluminum industry, petrochemical industry etc.
- **Forest based industries-** Those industries in which the products obtained from forests are used as raw material are called forest-based industries. Such as furniture, paper, medicine, broom, bidi, matchbox industry etc.

**Beginning of modern industries in India-** Modern Industries in Colonial India started with the cotton textile industry in Mumbai in 1854 and the jute industry in the Hooghly River valley near Kolkata in 1855. In independent India, the first industrial policy was issued in 1948, under which emphasis was laid on the development of new employment-oriented, agricultural and export-oriented industries while reducing regional imbalances. Emphasis was laid on

manufacturing of good quality and low-cost products by removing shortage of capital, raw materials and technology. The Planning Commission developed iron-steel industry, cotton textile industry, cement industry, paper industry, sugar industry etc. through various five-year plans. The major industries of India are as follows:

**Iron-steel industry-** The iron-steel industry is also called the pillar of industrial development in the world and the mother of other industries. The manufacture of

small objects of human use such as needles, nails, pins, etc. to the largest items, motors, rails, factory machines, etc. is not possible without iron and steel. So, it is a very important industry on which the economic development of the nation depends. The first iron-steel factory in modern India was established in 1874 at Kulti in West Bengal under the name of Bengal Iron Works, which was converted into a Bengal Iron and Steel Company in 1889. Jamshedji Tata established 'Tata Iron and Steel Company' at Sankchi (Jharkhand) in 1907 and Indian Iron Steel Company at Hirapur near Asansol (West Bengal) in 1909. In 1936, these two factories merged to form the Indian



Map- 4.1 Location of major iron and steel plants in India

Iron and Steel Company (IISCO). After independence, the iron and steel industry was developed through various five-year plans. Under this, iron and steel factories were established in Durgapur (West Bengal) with British assistance, Rourkela (Odisha) with German cooperation and Bhilai (Chhattisgarh) with the help of Russia. In 1964, he established the iron-steel industry in Bokaro (Jharkhand), which is the largest iron-steel industry in Asia. In 1973, with the objective of increasing the quality of this industry, the Steel Authority of India (SAIL) was established, which administers all the public-sector factories in the

country. Consumption and production of steel are considered as the development of any country. In the financial year 2020-21, crude steel production in India was 102 million metric tons. India is the second-largest steel producer in the world after China.

1. **Cotton Textile Industry-** Cotton textile industry has been the major industry of India since ancient times. In Vedic literature and Sindhu ghati civilization, there is a description of textile creation. Where cotton clothes are वासस् (Atharv. 9/5/26), warm clothes ऊर्णायु (Yaju. 13/50) and silk तार्य (Atharv. 18/4/31). Those who make clothes are given वासोवाय (ऋ. 10/26/6). Some of the words related to weaving clothes in the Vedas are as follows: Tantra- Loom, Tantu- Tana, Otu-Bana, Tasar-Karghi, Mayugh- Thread Pulling Pegs, Ancient- Thread-Pulled Warp, Pravya- Weaving forward, Up-Age- Backward knitting, Tanute-Spreads. It is mentioned in the Vedas that women and men used to do the work of weaving clothes. साध्वपांसी सनता न उक्षिते उषासानक्ता व्येव रण्विते । तन्तुं ततं संवयन्ती समीची यज्ञस्य पेशः सुदुघे पयस्वती ॥ (Rig. 2/3/6), पुमान् एतद् वयति (Atharv. 10/7/43) in the above-mentioned Rigveda and Atharvaveda mantras, both women and men used to weave clothes.

This ancient industry of India is still the first in the country in terms of expansion, production and employment. The first modern cotton textile factory in India was established in Calcutta in 1818 but it failed. In 1854, the first Indian cotton textile mill was established in Mumbai by Kawasji Dabur. There were 12 cotton textile mills in India till 1861, which increased to 417 mills in 1947. At present, there are more than 2000 cotton textile mills, in which 40 lakh people have got direct employment. Maharashtra, Gujarat, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, West Bengal, Rajasthan etc. are the major states in terms of cotton textile industry in present-day India. India is the second largest producer of cotton textiles in the world after China.

2. **Cement Industry-** The cement industry is a basic industry. It was invented in 1824 by a man named Joseph in Portland, England. That is why it is called Portland cement. The first modern cement factory in India was established in Chennai, Tamil Nadu, in 1904. After this, in 1912, the Indian Cement Factory was established at Porbandar in Gujarat, where production started in 1914. At the time of independence, there were 23 cement factories in India, out of which 5 factories moved to Pakistan. At present, there are about 130 large and 300 small factories producing 22.50 lakh metric tons of cement. The industry has been localized in areas of availability of raw materials and affordable transport. Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Gujarat, Tamil Nadu etc. are the major cement-producing states. In cement production, India ranks second in the world after China.

3. **Paper Industry-** The paper industry has been the ancient cottage industry of India. The knowledge given by the Indian sages was preserved on bhojpatras, palm leaves and handmade paper. It is an industry in which paper is prepared

by making pulp from agriculture and trees the residue of trees. In India, 70% of paper is made from sugarcane fiber pulp. The first paper mill in the country was set up in Shirampur (Bengal) in 1812. In 1879, the Indian Paper Mill was established in Lucknow as the Indian Paper Mill. In 1881, the Titagarh (Bengal) Paper Mill was established. At the time of independence, there were 17 paper mills in the country with a production capacity of 19,000 tons. At present, there are about 800 large and small factories producing 128 lakh tons of paper. 65% of these produced goods are used for newsprint and the rest are used for other purposes. The industry in the country was localized in the areas of procurement of construction materials and affordable transport. In India, the paper industry has developed in the states of Western Bengal, Maharashtra, Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat etc. There is a newsprint factory in **Nepanagar** in Madhya Pradesh and a government paper factory in Hoshangabad.

4. **Sugar Industry-** Sugar is an agro-based industry. The sugar industry is a seasonal industry as its raw material (sugarcane) is produced only in particular seasons. Therefore, sugar mills have been set up only in sugarcane-producing areas. The country's first sugar mill was established in 1903 at Pratap pur in the Deoria district of Uttar Pradesh. There are currently 735 sugar mills in the country. Uttar Pradesh has the highest number of sugar mills in India. In addition, sugar mills were also established in Maharashtra, Bihar, Tamil Nadu, Gujarat, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana and Rajasthan. Uttar Pradesh ranks first and Maharashtra second in sugar production in India. Brazil ranks first and India second in the world in sugar production. While India ranks first in the production of jaggery and khandsari. India is estimated to produce 20.90 lakh metric tons of sugar in 2021-22.
5. **Jute Industry-** The jute industry is the old traditional industry in India. The first modern type of jute factory in India was set up in 1859 at Risra, near Kolkata. After the partition of the country, jute mills remained in India, but three-fourths of the jute producing areas migrated to East Pakistan (now Bangladesh). Today, India is the largest producer of jute and jute products and the second-largest exporter after Bangladesh. As of 2019-20, there are about 114 jute factories in India. Most of them are located in a narrow strip 98 km long and 3 km wide on the banks of the Hooghly River in West Bengal. Because of the proximity of productive areas, the availability of cheap water transport, ease of access to raw materials for mills and the availability of abundant water to treat raw jute, etc., the jute industry developed on the banks of Hooghly River.
6. **Chemical Industry-** The chemical industry is developing at a rapid pace in our country. It is currently the fourth largest industry in India. It supplies raw materials for industries like iron steel, textiles, paper, artificial rubber, plastic fertilizers etc. Tamil Nadu, Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, West Bengal, Jharkhand etc. are the centers of chemical industry in India. The chemical



industry contributes about 3% of the G.D.P. of India. In terms of size, this industry is the third largest in Asia and the 6<sup>th</sup> largest in the world.

7. **Information Technology and Electronic Industry-** Information Technology has a huge contribution in the current development of India. In 2009, it contributed 5.19% to the GDP. Today, Infosys, TCS, Wipro and Satyam are the major national IT companies. Similarly, major multinational companies are Intel, Microsoft, and Google etc. Bengaluru is called Silicon Valley (IT capital of India) from the point of view of information technology. Under electronic industries, TV and other appliances like coolers, refrigerators, washing machines, computers, mobiles, etc. are included. In India, Pune, Bengaluru, Hyderabad, Noida, Lucknow, Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata are the hubs of electronic industry.
8. **Automobile Industry-** At present, the automobile industry has developed due to the growth in the field of transportation and freight in India. These industries include those related to the manufacture of bikes, cars, trucks, buses, heavy machinery, etc. The major centers of these industries in India are located around Chennai, Pune, Gurugram, Delhi, Bengaluru and Hyderabad. After liberalization, the demand for new models of vehicles has increased. The major companies in this sector are Maruti Suzuki, Mahindra, Tata, Ford MG, Kia, Hyundai, JCB, Escorts, Hero, Honda, etc. At present, governments are working on the development of e-electric vehicles to address the growing problem of pollution. Today, they have entered the Indian motor vehicle market. The use of e-buses, e-bikes, e-rickshaws, etc. is increasing rapidly.

**Importance of Manufacturing-** Manufacturing industries are generally considered to be the backbone of economic development.

1. The manufacturing industry has led to modernization of agriculture. Due to which employment opportunities have increased due to the expansion of secondary and tertiary services.
2. Industrial development in the country has helped in removing unemployment, poverty alleviation, backwardness and regional inequalities.
3. Goods manufactured from the manufacturing industry are exported which leads to the receipt of foreign exchange.
4. At present, only those countries are developed, which manufacture raw materials in different and more valuable finished goods.

Agriculture and industry are not separate from each other but complementary to each other. For example, in India, agro-industries have encouraged an increase in agricultural yields. These industries depend on agriculture for raw materials. Farmers are dependent on the products manufactured by these industries such as pumps, fertilizers, pesticides, plastic pipes, machines and agricultural tools etc. for irrigation. Therefore, the development and competition of the manufacturing industry has not only given a boost to agricultural production but also enabled the production process.

## Contribution of Industries to National Economy-

- (1) Increase in production from industries leads to increase in per capita income and improvement in standard of living.
- (2) Industries increase the means of employment and strengthen human resources.
- (3) National income increases capital is formed.
- (4) Increasing contribution of industries leads to progress in other segments of the economy - agriculture, minerals, transport etc.
- (5) Research gets a boost and technology develops.



Fig. 4.2 Industrial pollution

The manufacturing industry has contributed only 17% of the 27% to the GDP in the country in the last 18-20 years, while the remaining 10% is contributed by mining, gas, electricity and energy. With appropriate government policies and new efforts to increase industrial production, economists predict that the manufacturing industry can meet its target in the next decade.

**Impact of industrial pollution on human life-** Polluted environment damages the entire ecosystem. This has a fatal effect on the food chain and marine flora and fauna. Its main side effects on human life are as follows-

- Polluted air damages the respiratory system of human beings. This leads to deadly diseases like asthma, pneumonia, sore throat as well as cancer, diabetes and heart disease.
- Polluted drinking water, disease causing bacteria and viruses reach the human body and cause diseases. Consumption of polluted water causes dysentery, cholera, diarrhea, typhoid, skin diseases, cough, colds, paralysis, blindness, and jaundice and stomach diseases.
- Many germs are produced in dirty environments which are responsible for diseases like dysentery, tuberculosis, cholera, intestinal diseases, and eye irritation etc. for humans.
- Noise pollution has the greatest impact on hearing power. The person gets swept away by excessive noise. Apart from this, diseases like blood pressure, heart disease, headache, nervousness etc. also arise in humans.

Ganga and its tributaries in the country have become much polluted due to the waste of leather, paper, fertilizer, chemical and pharmaceutical industries located on the banks of these rivers. Air pollution and dirty water are reducing the rainfall and fertility of the land. Due to the rise in temperature, the water sources of the Continuous Channel and Sadaneera rivers Gangotri, Yamunotri are on the verge of drying up. If this form of industrialization continues, the day is

not far when human beings will be seen struggling with disasters like famine, drought and floods and there will be nothing left to give to the coming generations.

**Measures to control industrial pollution-** Industrial pollution is polluting our environment, which expresses the possibility of future crises. There are many factors of environmental pollution, of which industrialization is the most prominent. Therefore, we cannot stop industrial pollution here, but it is necessary to take the following measures to control industrial pollution –

- **Measures to control air pollution-** The impact of harmful gases emitted by factories can be reduced by increasing the height of their chimneys tomorrow. Less polluting technology should be adopted in industries. Before setting up the factory, means of estimating and controlling pollution such as vegetation cover etc. should be developed in the factory premises. Factories should use minimum polluting energy resources, such as solar energy.
- **Measures to control water pollution-** Chemical industries which pollute water the most should be set up away from reservoirs and rivers. The water used in industries should not be directly immersed in reservoirs and rivers. Rather, this water should be treated and used for irrigation. Trees should be planted on vacant places on the side of the road and near the factories.
- **Measures to control soil pollution-** Waste deposition can be thrown in open spaces and the heat generated from it can be used as energy by burning the wastes with modern technology. It destroys about 80% of the waste and can also control the air pollution caused by the burning of waste. Compost can be made useful by making compost from waste.
- **Measures to control noise pollution-** Innovative technology should be used to reduce noise generated by industries. By correcting the maintenance of machines in industries, the noise of machines can be reduced. Bad machines make more noise. Industry development is essential for economic development and it is impossible to be a pollution-free industry. Therefore, pollution cannot be stopped, only controlled.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which of the following is a mineral based industry-  
A. Cotton Textile Industry  
B. Cement Industry  
C. Sugar Industry  
D. Paper Industry
2. On which of the following basis Industries are classified-  
A. Ownership  
B. Size  
C. Raw Material  
D. All The Above
3. The most prominent cotton textile producing state of South India-  
A. Kerala  
B. Karnataka  
C. Tamil Nadu  
D. Telangana

4. Which city is called the IT capital of India?  
A. Delhi                      B. Pune                      C. Bangalore                      D. Mumbai
5. Which is the third largest industry in Asia-  
A. Chemical Industry                      B. Jute Industry  
C. Iron and Steel Industry                      D. None of The Above
6. What is the rank of India in cement production in the world?  
A. 1st                      B. 2nd                      C. 3rd                      D. 4th

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Thear is news print factory..... (Hoshangabad/Nepa Nagar)
2. ....is called Electronic capital of India (Hyderabad/Bengaluru)
3. Note printing paper factory is in..... (Hoshangabad/Nepanagar)

### (True/False) Tell me-

1. Paper industry has been the ancient cottage industry of India. (True/False)
2. Rourkela Steel Plant is in Gujarat. (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                                  |                  |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. First Sugar Industry          | A. Gujarat       |
| 2. First Iron and Steel Industry | B. Uttar Pradesh |
| 3. First Cement Factory          | C. West Bengal   |

### Very short answer question-

1. Where has the country's first sugar mill been established?
2. Where is the government paper printing factory located?
3. Name the three major cement producing states.
4. What is industry?
5. What is the electronic capital of India?
6. When was India's first industrial policy released?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What is cottage industry? What industries are covered under?
2. Why is iron and steel industry called 'basic' industry?
3. Write down measures to control industrial pollution?
4. What is the importance of manufacturing?
5. Explain the beginning of modern industries in India.
6. Explain the skill development plan.

### Long Answer Questions-

1. How many types of industries are there in India? Describe.
2. Write a essay on iron and steel industry in India.
3. On what basis are industries classified? Describe.
4. Highlight industrial pollution.

### Project-

1. Collect information about raw materials, manufacturing process, investment, transportation, etc. In agro-based industries of your area and find out whether these factories comply with environmental rules.
2. Map work

---

# VEDDBHUSHAN 5<sup>th</sup> YEAR HISTORY



## Chapter – 5

### Major Philosophies of India

**In this chapter-** meaning of the word philosophy, Indian philosophy, theistic philosophy, Sankhya philosophy, Yoga philosophy, Nyaya philosophy, Vaishesh philosophy, Purva Mimamsa philosophy, Uttara Mimamsa philosophy, Advaitaism, Dualism, Atheistic philosophy, Charvaka philosophy, Jain philosophy, Buddhist philosophy, Indian The utility of visions.

Dear students! Since the beginning of civilization, man has been naturally thinking about the changes and events happening around him since time immemorial. The search for truth in life and the idea of life's problems and solutions have been coming in the mind continuously. What am I? Where do I come from? What is a soul? What is an organism? What is the universe? As in the process of thinking, philosopher sages have helped (co-operation) in developing human life philosophy

**Meaning of the word Darshan-** The word Darshan is derived from the Sanskrit root 'Drish', which means to see (to know the essence). While defining philosophy in Sanskrit literature, it has been said that, 'दृश्यते तत्त्वम् अनेन' which means philosophy is the knowledge which contemplates the real element. Therefore, it can be said without any doubt that the science which interprets the truth in a holistic and accurate form is philosophy. Despite the different methods of worship of all philosophies, the goal is the same, which is to free man from the causes of sorrow (salvation).

Philosophy is called '**Philosophy**' in the countries of the West, which is made up of two words - Philos and Sophia which means love of knowledge. The mystics who are fond of knowledge and search for truth are called Philosophers. Shankaracharya, Madhvacharya, Ramanujacharya, Vallabhacharya, Nagarjuna, Mahavir Swami, Gautam Buddha etc. became great Indian philosophers in the Indian philosophy tradition. Swami Vivekananda, Dr. Radhakrishnan, Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar etc. are famous philosophers in modern India.

**Indian Philosophy-** Indian philosophical tradition is very ancient, vast and immense. Indian philosophy, which is the foundation stone of our culture and preaches us to lead an ideal, moral, virtuous life. There are two streams in the Indian philosophy tradition– the Theist (आस्तिक) and the Atheist (नास्तिक).

**Theist (आस्तिक) Philosophy-** The philosophy which accepts the principles propounded in the Vedas as evidence is called '**Theist (आस्तिक) Darshan**'. There are six theistic philosophies in the Indian philosophical tradition-Sankhya, Yoga, Nyaya, Vaisesik, Purva Mimamsa and Uttara Mimamsa (Vedanta). These theistic philosophies are called 'Vedic philosophy'. The Aranyaka and Upanishat parts of the Vedas present a progressive outlook. The Upanishats, the last sections of the Vedas, represent the origin and early stage of development of Indian

philosophy. The true form of substances has been rendered in the Upanishads. Therefore, principles and principles have been presented in the Vedic philosophy texts for the search for truth and knowledge.

**Atheist (नास्तिक) Darshana-** The philosophy tradition which does not accept the Vedas as proof is called **Nastic Darshana**. There is a popular statement for atheists that 'Nastiko Veda Nindak:' means those who condemn Vedas are atheists. There are mainly three streams of atheistic philosophy-Charvak, Buddhist and Jain.

Let us understand the brief introduction of the subject available in the philosophies of the Indian thought tradition-

### **Theist (आस्तिक) Philosophy-**

**1. Sankhya Philosophy -** The word Sankhya means number-related or analysis. When a conclusive statement is well described it is called 'Sankhya'. Kapil Muni is the originator of Sankhya philosophy. The separate enumeration of the numbers of the elements of the universe is the precept of the Sankhya Shastra. In this philosophy, the material cause of the world, the description of nature, the difference between the good and bad qualities and the symptoms of their actions have been given. In Sankhya Darshana, along with three types of sorrows – spiritual, adhibhautik, and adhidaivik, there has also been a discussion about retirement or salvation from them. 25 elements have been described in the Sankhya philosophy-

- i. **Nature-** Nature or prime bottomless latent element is one.
- ii. **Deformity-** Deformity elements are sixteen - hands, feet, speech, anus, genitalia, eye, ear, nose, jihwa, skin, mind, earth, water, air, sky, and fire.
- iii. **Nature and deformity elements-** seven nature-distortion elements are stated- ego, importance ( intelligence ), word tonal, tactile, form, tambar, juice tambar and odor.
- iv. **Neither nature nor distortion-** Neither nature nor distortion in the numeric philosophy is just one, which is called male (soul).  
The three proofs proving the above twenty-five elements are stated in the Sankhya philosophy- “दृष्टमनुमानमाप्तवचनं च सर्वप्रमाणसिद्धत्वात्. त्रिविधं प्रमाणमिष्टं प्रमेयसिद्धिः प्रमाणाद्धि ॥“ (सांख्यकारिका- 4) That is, these three evidences are valid only by direct (parable), conjecture and word proof (octave all evidence in). Since the proof itself is the proof of the theorem. So, the first evidence is described and the subsequent theorems are rendered.

**2. Yoga Darshan-** The literal meaning of Yoga is 'Union'. The originator of Yoga philosophy is sage 'Patanjali'. The basic text of Yoga philosophy is 'Yoga Sutra' of Patanjali. According to Maharishi Patanjali, योगश्चित्तवृत्ति निरोधः (yogasutra 1.2) means stopping of the instincts of the mind is yoga. तदा द्रष्टुः स्वरूपेऽवस्थानम् (yogasutra 1.3) i.e. after stopping the instincts of the mind, the soul gets established in its true form/nature.

The importance of Yoga is established in the Vedas. यस्मादृते न सिध्यति यज्ञो विपश्चितश्चन् । स धीनां योगमिन्वति (Rigveda 1.18.7) That is , ' Without Yoga, even a scholar's yajna rituals cannot be accomplished. Yoga is the control of mental tendencies, Yoga is embedded in all the actions. In this context, only wise being got succeed in uniting their intelligence and actions through yogic state. Yoga is not only a meduim but also an ultimate goal (purpose). स घा नो योग आभुवत् स राये स पुरं ध्याम् । गमद् वाजेभिरा स नः ॥ (Rigveda 1.5.3) That is , may Parmatma blessed us our samadhi (yoga) , may we attain wisdom , discretion, samadhi (enlightment) and Ritambhara Prajna by his grace , may we attain supreme conciousness along with various accomplishments.

Yoga activities regulate body , soul and senses. Hence this philosophy is also called the means to attain moksha or liberation. Moksha can be achieved by the practice of Ashtangayoga . Maharishi Patanjali has described eight parts of Yoga in Yoga Sutra- यम-नियमा-आसन-प्राणायाम-प्रत्याहार-धारणा-ध्यान-समाधयोऽष्टावङ्गानि ॥ (yogasutra 2.29) Ashtangayoga includes self-control (yama) , rules to be followed for self upliftment (niyama) , asanas (various yoga asanas) , breathing control (pranayam), control over senses (pratyahara) , concentration of mind on one object (dharana), meditation on a chosen object (dhyana) and cessation of the duality of mind and matter (samadhi). In yoga philosophy, Ishwara is recognized as a guru. The accomplishments of Yoga and the duties required of a Yogi have been prescribed in Yoga Darshan.

**3. Philosophy of Justice (न्याय) -** The promoters of the philosophy of justice are Sage **Akshapad Gautam** (अक्षपाद गौतम). The oldest and most famous book of justice philosophy is 'Nyaysutra'. According to Acharya Devraj, 'नीयते विवक्षितार्थः अनेन इति न्यायः' That is, the means by which we know our knowledgeable element is justice. In the first sutra of Jurisdiction Granth, the element is described as the means of salvation. - 'प्रमाण-प्रमेय-संशय-प्रयोजन-दृष्टान्त-सिद्धान्ता-ऽवयव-तर्क-निर्णय-वाद-जल्प-वितण्डा-हेत्वाभास-च्छल-जाति-निग्रहस्थानानां तत्त्वज्ञानात् निःश्रेयसाधिगमः इति ॥' (न्यायसूत्र-1.1.1) That is, proof, theorem, skepticism, purpose, parable, theory, invocation, logic, judgment, suit, jalp, finance, hematabhas, deceit, caste and satire from the element (Moksha/Welfare) is achieved.

The philosophy of justice is also called logic, credentials, incisiveness, hetuvidya and litigants. The accomplishment of the self-contained substances in the philosophy of justice is told by the elements, whose number is mentioned as sixteen-1. The proofs are four - direct, conjecture, simile and word. 2. The theorems (प्रमेय) are twelve -soul, body, instruments, meaning, intelligence (knowledge/achievement), mind, instinct, blame, phantom, fruit, grief and upwardness. 3. Daubt 4. Purpose 5. Parable 6. Principle Four types - Sarvatantra, Uttar Pradesh, Tribunal and Candidate Principle. 7. Components 8. Argument 9. Decision 10. Vad 11. Zalp 12. Financial 13. The hetvaabhasa are five -



egalitarianism, against, episodes, practicable and timeless. 14. Trick 15. Caste 16. Degreespace.

According to the philosophy of Nyay, truth is defined as real knowledge that is, knowing an object in the form it is. For example, understand the snake as a snake and the cup as a cup.

**Vaishyas Darshan-** Vaishyasik generally means special or specific. It has a philosophical meaning: 'विशेष पदार्थमधिकृत्य कृतं शास्त्रं वैशेषिकम्' that is, the scripture that follows special matter as original is theistic. The basic method is the true and objective philosophy of the world. Vaishyas Darshan is also known as Aulukya, Kanad or Pashupat Darshan. The originator of this philosophy was 'Kanad' Sage, who inscribed the ideas of self-darshan in Vaishyasikasutra. There are ten chapters in the Vaishikasutra, each chapter having two Ahnik and 370 sutras. The basic philosophy presents the deliberations of subjects like Bhukamp, Varsha, Champ, Gravity Strength, Sound Science etc.

The first formula of Vaishika philosophy is- 'अथातो धर्मजिज्ञास' That is, there is now a curiosity to know religion (doable deeds). The second formula is- 'यतोऽभ्युदयनिःश्रेयसिद्धिः स धर्मः' That is, religion is the one from which the accomplishment of the affections and the problems. Vaishyashik philosophy is actually a self-evident science philosophy. In the basic philosophy, the types of substances have been revealed - 1. Matter 2. Properties 3. Karma 4. General 5. Special 6. In the meantime, Nine Dravya - Sephivi, Water, Tej, Air, Sky, Kaal, Disha, Spirit and Mind. There are twenty-four qualities-touch, juice, form, girdle, word, number, department, coincidence, result, isolation, parity, indigence, intelligence, happiness, sorrow, desire, malice, religion, unrighteousness, effort, rites, affection, gravity, and fluidity. Five deeds - precipitation, precipitation, accretions, broadcasting, and gaman. Two general powers and specific two general are stated. Direct and predictable have been considered two types of evidence in theological philosophy. Its fundamental principles are nuclear, anecdotalist, antidote, and salvationist.

The thinkers of the basic philosophy recognize that the entire things of the world are made up of five elements-earth, water, air, fire and sky. They accept God as the directorial principle. Living beings get the award at the bottom of the award according to their work, the deepening of their deed. The creation and destruction of creation is an unending process and this sequence goes on as God wishes.

Anec commentaries written by Parantapapad on the original Vashikasutra composed by Kanad 'पदार्थधर्मसंग्रह' Is the best of them. Vaishika Darshan clarifies the basis of the original theory of creation. A combination of molecules and atoms makes the material and thus clarifies the process of creation of creation.

#### 4. Mimansa Darshan- Dharma and Veda Thematic Ideas, called 'Mimansa'.

The antidote to Mimansa philosophy is religion. What is religion? This has been given a detailed consideration in Mimansa Darshan. According to

Mimansa Darshan, Veda is apt, routine and paramount. It is our religion to follow the Vedabha. The main three parts of this philosophy are- the first part considers the main means of enlightenment; the second part is spirituality-discretion and the third part is a review of duty. Meemansa Darshan has revealed the means of enlightenment- Ghost six. Direct 2. Assumption 3. Upman 4. Word 5. Arthropathy 6. Completion. Mimansa aims to bring happiness to human beings, for which two means have been revealed - perfect karma and spiritual knowledge.

In fact, the Mimansa philosophy is related to the interpretation, use and use of the Veda Code and the Brahmin section. According to Mimansa philosophy, Veda is eternal and Vedas contain all knowledge and religion means to follow the Vedas-canonical duties in a manner. This philosophy incorporates the judicial-religious into itself and emphasizes true knowledge. Jamini Krit Mimnasutra as the original text of Mimansa Darshan, which is divided into 12 chapters. These twelve chapters are based on twelve themes, also called 'gut symptom'. It is also a belief that in addition to the above twelve chapters, four other chapters were also composed by Jamini, known as Sankara

### Do you know?

- Maharishi used to eat granulated particles in the field by choosing them, so they were known as Kanad (Kanana+Ad) or Kanbhaksha. According to Udaanacharya's 'Kiranavali', Qaship was a tribe Brahmin. In Vyupurana, Kanad is considered a resident of Prabhasatirth, the father of Somasharma and the incarnation of Shiva. It is recognized that he was the son of Uluq sage, hence his philosophy is also called 'Aulukya Darshan'. Janshruti that Kanad was doing penance when God himself preached six substances by taking the form of Uluq, hence the Vaishyasik philosophy is called 'Uluken Proktam'.

Kand or Deity Kand. Mimnasutra is also called antecedent, in which religion is considered. Vedanta Darshan is also called Utamimansa, in which Brahma is thought. Maharishi also calls Mimansutra 'Jaminian Dharmamimansa' due to the Jaimini composed. Jamini's sources describe many themes with the discovery of the nature of religion, the perception of human kurtavya and akurtavya. According to Jamini Rishi, religion is the rule that determines the fruit of karma. This philosophy emphasizes the prescribed ritual topics in the Veda.

**5. Uttaramimansa Darshan (Vedanta)** - Uttaramimansa Darshan is a source of enlightenment, which catalyzes a person towards enlightenment. The main sources of the Utamimansa philosophy are the Upanishats, and they are also called Vedanta Darshan, being the last part of the Vedas, the abstract part. The mains and descriptions of rituals and worship are in the Mantra and Brahmins and the knowledge of the Upanishads. The promoters of Vedanta Darshan are the latter. Maharishi Badrayana Pranit Sutra is called Brahmasutra for rendering Brahma curiosity. Brahmasutra is also called Vedantasutra, Shararak Mimansa or Uttaramimansa. The three prevalent

branches of Vedanta are Advaita, duality, and Specialty. Bhagavatpad Adishandarkaracharya, Madhwacharya and Ramanujacharya are considered to be the promoters of these three Vedanta philosophies respectively, In addition to these, there are other branches of Indian philosophies.

**Monotheism** (अद्वैतवाद)- According to Vedant Darshan- 'Brahm is true, Jagat is false'. This is the core of monotheism. Advaita literally means - 'denying duality' ie 'unity of life and Brahma'. अद्वैतर्षणस्य प्रतिपादनं भगवत्पदेन स्वस्य 'ब्रह्मसूत्रख्ये' ब्रह्म सत्यं, जगन्मिथ्या, जीवो ब्रह्म नपरः' इति उक्तम् ॥ That is, 'Brahm is true, Jagat is false, Jeeva is Brahma, so Jeeva is not different from Brahma'. The initialist, describing Brahm as true, immutable, ultimate wisdom, proposed that '**Brahm is the only supreme**'. The knowledge of Brahma is the essence of all things and the ultimate truth. Adishandakracharya has discussed the demerit form of Brahma. Deputy sentences 'तत्त्वमसि' (that's you), 'अयमात्मा ब्रह्म' (This soul is Brahm), 'अहं ब्रह्मास्मि' (I am Brahm), 'प्रज्ञानं ब्रह्म' (Enlightenment is Brahman) by the initial organism is integral to formless Brahma. Brahma is mentioned for the origin, status and holocaust of Jagat. He has accepted Brahma and Jeevatma as sat, chit and joy. He told in his sermons that God exists at the same time in both the form of Nirguna and Saguna. The main things of his philosophy are -

- Brahm and Jeeva are one. Due to ignorance (Maya) we see inside both.
- Knowledge is necessary for the liberation of the organism.
- The liberation of the creature is in the Brahma.

**Dualism** (द्वैतवाद)- A typical stream of Vedanta philosophy is dualism. Brahma has been distinguished as a virtue in duality philosophy. Duality is a Sanskrit-language word that represents two different formats. Duality in religion and philosophy means two (Jeeva and Brahma) and on the basis of this, God is worshiped. The imperfection that dissipates the power of both Jeeva and Brahma is called dualism. Dualism is called Vedanta Darshan reaching the culmination of philosophical ideas. In dualism, Jagat and Brahma are described as mutual. In dualism, evidence of Shruti, Smriti and Brahmasutra is valid, so it is Vedanta. It tells the attainment of Paramukta Brahma, hence it is also called Brahmanism. Dualism has ten substances, which are placed in two classes- 1. Design ( Fluid, Properties, Karma, General, Special) 2. Vaishyasik substance ( specific, Anshi, Shakti, analogy, absence) twenty types of matter: divine, laxmi, creature, unattended, sky, nature, virtue, egoism, intelligence, mind, sense, quantity, ghost, universe, ignorance, characters, darkness, lust, tense, and image. Madhvacharya ji has written a good thing about the Rigveda.



Fig - 5.1  
Adishandakracharakva

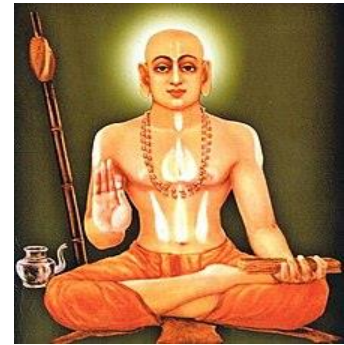


Figure 5.2-  
Madhwacharya

Madhavacharya is the first promoter of dualism. On the basis of Shruti and logic, Madhvacharya ji is of the opinion that- “श्रीमन्मध्वमते हरिः परतरः सत्यं जगत्त्वतः भिन्ना जीवगणा हरेरनुचराः नीचोच्चभावं गताः मुक्तिर्नैजसुखानुभूतिरमला भक्तिश्च तत्साधनं. ह्यक्षादित्रितयं प्रमाणमखिलाग्न्यायैकवेद्यो हरिः” ॥ That is, according to Sri Madhvacharya in Dvaita Vedanta, Lord Sri Hari is the best, the world is true, the soul and the Supreme Soul are different, all living beings are followers of Sri Hari, all living beings have different levels, salvation is happiness in true sense, Strong devotion is the means of salvation, there are three proofs, direct, inference and agam, Hari can be known only from the Vedas. Madhvacharya propounded 'Panchabhed Siddhanta' - 1. There is eternal difference between God and the creature. 2. God is eternally different from inert matter. 3. The inert matter of the living being is eternally different. 4. There is a daily difference between one living being and another living being. 5. There is always a difference between one inert substance and another inert substance.

**Signs of Dharma-** In the Vedic tradition, there is mention of the system of four Purusharthas (Dharma, Artha, Kama and Moksha) to improve the life of a human being from a spiritual and physical point of view. Religion is the basic and main among these four efforts. Dharma is defined in the Vaisesika Sutra, ‘यतोऽभ्युदय-निःश्रेयस-सिद्धिः स धर्मः’ (1.1.2) That is, that which leads to the achievement of Abhyudaya and Nihshreyas, that is Dharma. It has been said in Mahanarayano Upanishad that, 'Dharmo Vishwasya Jagat: Pratishtha' means, the condition of the world and the world is due to Dharma. The word '**Dharma**' is derived from the root 'Dhri' which means 'to hold', such as the religion of fire is warmth and brightness, the religion of the student is to study, the religion of the teacher is to teach, the religion of the king is to follow and protect the subjects and the Sun The religion of is to give light. Hence, it is clear that the meaning of religion is 'realization of duty'. Humanity, morality, dutifulness is the natural religion of human. In order to improve human life and to recognize religion, the characteristics of religion have been described in our scriptures- “धृतिः क्षमा दमोऽस्तेयं शौचमिन्द्रियनिग्रहः। धीर्विद्या सत्यमक्रोधो दशकं धर्मलक्षणम् ॥” (Manu.6.92) That is, Dhriti, forgiveness, restraint, abstinence, chastity, sense control, good sense, curiosity for learning, truth and anger are the ten signs of religion..

1. **Charvak philosophy-** The Charvaka philosophy is a materialistic and atheistic philosophy in the Indian philosophical tradition. In this philosophy, the supernatural power has been rejected and only direct proof has been given recognition. The word Charvak is derived from the union of two Sanskrit words

Patience (धृति)	Indriya Nigraha- To Control The Senses
Sorry (क्षमा)	Dhee- The True Use Of Intelligence
Abstinence (संयम) - Control Over Passions	Atheist Philosophy- Curiosity Of Learning- Knowledge
Asteya (अस्तेय) - Don't Steal	Truth- To Hold Truth By Mind, Action, Word
Shuchita (शुचिता) - Purity Inside And Outside	Akrodh- Not To Be Angry

- Charu + Vaak, which means 'one who speaks sweetly'. In the Buddhist Pitaka texts, the word 'Lokayat' is used for this, which means the ideology that believes in the world, which does not believe in heaven, hell, salvation etc. Brihaspati is considered to be the founder of Charvaka philosophy. The prescriptive texts of this philosophy are– Brihaspatisutra, Sarvadarshan samgraha and Sarvadarshan shiromani.

Charvak philosophy only believes in the existence of physical objects. In the Charvak Darshana, the existence of the sky has not been accepted due to non-appearance of the sky among the five elements (earth, water, fire, air and sky). According to Charvak philosophy, God, soul, heaven, another world etc. are not visible i.e. they are not visible, hence they do not exist. The body has been created by the combination of four material substances (earth, water, fire, air). Consciousness (soul) is generated in the body by the special combination of these elements. Happens and after death there is no existence of consciousness. In this philosophy, the goal of life has been described as sensual pleasure. यावज्जीवेत् सुखं जीवेत्, ऋणं कृत्वा घृतं पिबेत्. भस्मीभूतस्य देहस्य पुनरागमनं कुतः ॥ That is, as long as you live, live happily, live a luxurious life by taking loan. Where does the body return after being consumed?

**2. Jain Philosophy-** The followers who follow the teachings of 'Jin' are called Jains and their communal doctrines are called Jain philosophy. 'Jin' means conqueror of the senses. Jino had 24 Tirthankaras in Jainism and philosophy, of whom Rishabhadeva is considered the founder and first Tirthankara of Jainism and Mahavira is considered the last Tirthankara. Jain philosophy is called the philosophy of Sramana. Jain philosophy is an atheistic philosophy. There are two sects of Jain philosophy - Svetambar and Digambar.

**Mahavira- 24th Tirthankara** Mahavira Swami, who was born in 599 BC. He was born in Kundagram, in the Vaishali Republic (Bihar). His father Siddhartha, was the chieftain of the Jyatrika clan and his mother, Trishala was the sister of the Lichchivi king, Chetaka. Mahavira's wife's name was Yashoda. Mahavira's childhood name was Vardhamana. He was named 'Mahavir' due to his heroic nature in childhood.

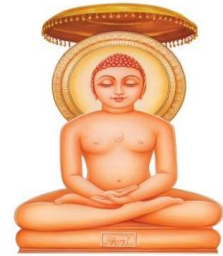


Fig 5.3 Mahavira

At the age of 30, he left all his royal splendor and pleasures in search of knowledge. He attained true knowledge by sitting under a tree for a year on the banks of the river Rijubaluka in the village of Jimbhrika and performing penance for years without food or water..

**Jain philosophy mentions eight karmas-** Jnanavarana, Darshanavarana, Vedaniya, Mohaniya, Ayu, Namakarma, Gotrakarma, and Antaraya Karma. These eight actions lead to bondage. The sole purpose of this religion is to attain salvation by conquering worldly delusions illusions, and the senses. Jain philosophy preaches the Triratna (three means) for the path of salvation: 'सम्यग्दर्शनज्ञानचरित्राणि मोक्षमार्ग' इति (तत्त्वार्थ सूत्र-1.1). That is, right philosophy, right knowledge and right character are the paths to salvation. The 'five Mahavratā'

(Ahimsa, Amrisha, Asteya, Aparigraha and Brahmacharya) are mentioned for attaining the Triratna.

- **Non-violence** (अहिंसा) - न यत्प्रमादयोगेन जीवितव्यपरोपणम्. चराणां स्थावराणां च तदहिंसाव्रतं मतम् ॥ That is, non-violence is not to have a feeling of violence towards anyone with mind, action and word is true non-violence.
- **Amrsha** (अमृषा) - प्रियं पथ्यं वचस्तथ्यं सूनृतं व्रतमुच्यते. तत्तथ्यमपि नो तथ्यमप्रियं चाहितं च यत् ॥ That is, every person should speak the truth in every situation.
- **Asteya** (अस्तेय) - Asteya means not to steal. अनादानमदत्तस्यास्तेयव्रतमुदीरितम्. बाह्याः प्राणाः नृणामर्थो हरता तं हता हि ते ॥ That is, one should not take or desire anything belonging to another person without permission. Meaning is the external life, taking it away would be considered as killing life.
- **Aparigraha** (अपरिग्रह) - सर्वभावेषु मूर्च्छयास्यागः स्यादपरिग्रहः. यदसत्त्वपि जायेत मूर्च्छया चित्तविप्लवः ॥ that is, not collecting more than necessary is called aparigraha. Because by desire the mind is distorted in unreal things.
- **Celibacy** (ब्रह्मचर्य) - दिव्यौदरिककामानां कृतानुमतकारितैः । मनोवाक्कायतस्यागो ब्रह्माष्टादशधा मतम् ॥ That is, to acquire knowledge and power by staying away from delusion and desire, to give up anything more than necessary and to exercise restraint on the senses is called celibacy.

**Saptabhangi Nyaya-** In Jain jurisprudence, any consultation is in the form of seven sentences, hence it is called Saptabhangi Nyaya. Bhang means aggregation. There are three types of writing styles of Saptabhangi Nyaya- सप्तभङ्गिनय, सप्तभङ्गिनय तथा सप्तभङ्गिनय (समाहार द्विगु). अत्र सर्वत्र सप्तभङ्गिनयाख्यं न्यायमवतारयन्ति जैनाः. स्यादस्ति, स्यान्नास्ति, स्यादस्ति च नास्ति च, स्यादवक्तव्यः, स्यादस्ति चावक्तव्यः, स्यान्नास्ति चावक्तव्यः, स्यादस्ति च नास्ति चावक्तव्यः इति । That is, the Jains present the Saptabhangi-naya everywhere. It has seven forms-

1. स्यादस्ति- is somehow-
2. स्यान्नास्ति- Not in any way.
3. स्यादस्ति च नास्ति च- Somehow is and is not.
4. स्यादवक्तव्यः - Somehow indescribable.
5. स्यादस्ति चावक्तव्यः- is somehow and indescribable.
6. स्यान्नास्ति चावक्तव्यः- is not in any way and is indescribable.
7. स्यादस्ति च नास्ति चावक्तव्यः - Somehow is, is not and is indescribable.

Jain philosophy believes in the immortality of the soul, reincarnation and karma. Jain philosophy opposes casteism and vanity and supports respect for women. Therefore, the philosophical thought of Jain philosophy basically encourages self-welfare.

3. **Buddhist Philosophy-** The founder and initiator of Buddhism and philosophy is Mahatma Gautama Buddha, who spoke out against the social stereotypes and complexities prevalent in the society of the time. The philosophy introduced by the knowledge of Mahatma Buddha was called Buddhist philosophy. Buddhist philosophy is basically atheistic and non-spiritual, but it believes in reincarnation. Gautama Buddha emphasized human dignity. The main objective of Buddhist philosophy has been liberation from suffering. Buddhist philosophy states four noble truths:

- **Suffering-** Birth and death, coincidence and separation in the world are equal.
- **Cause of suffering-** The cause of all kinds of suffering is craving and ignorance.
- **Grief prevention -** The destruction of craving and ignorance makes it possible to relieve suffering.
- **Dukh Nirodhagamini Pratipada-** To conquer sufferings through the eightfold path.

**Ashtanga Path** (अष्टाङ्गिक मार्ग) - The Ashtanga Path is mentioned in Buddhist philosophy. Gautama Buddha said that he preached the eightfold path to attain Nirvana (salvation)-

1. **Right vision (सम्यक् दृष्टि)** - Belief in the four noble truths distinguishing between truth and falsehood, sin and virtue.
2. **Right Resolution (सम्यक् संकल्प)** - Resolve to develop mentally and morally by staying away from craving.
3. **Right speak (सम्यक् वाणी)** - Always speak the truth and sweet words.
4. **Right Deed (सम्यक् कर्म)** - Always doing true and good deeds.
5. **Right living (सम्यक् जीविका)** - Adopt holy tricks for your livelihood.
6. **Right Attempt (सम्यक् प्रयास)** - Trying to make yourself better and working hard to do the best job.
7. **Right Commemoration (सम्यक् स्मृति)** - Act prudently and carefully, always keeping in mind one's own mistakes.
8. **Right mausoleum (सम्यक् समाधि)** - Meditation to concentrate the mind.

According to the doctrinal differences, four philosophies are famous in the Buddhist tradition- ते च बौद्धाश्चतुर्विधया भावनया परमपुरुषार्थं कथयन्ति. ते च माध्यमिक-योगाचार-सौत्रान्तिक-वैभाषिकसंज्ञाभिः प्रसिद्धा बौद्धा यथाक्रमं सर्वशून्यत्व बाह्यार्थशून्यत्व बाह्यार्थानुमेयत्व बाह्यार्थप्रत्यक्षत्ववादान् आतिष्ठन्ते. यद्यपि भगवान्बुद्धः एक एव बोधयिता तथापि बौद्धव्यानां बुद्धिभेदाच्चातुर्विध्यम्. सर्वं क्षणिकं क्षणिकं, दुःखं दुःखं, स्वलक्षणं स्वलक्षणं, शून्यं शून्यमिति भावनाचतुष्टयमुपदिष्टं द्रष्टव्यम् .

These Buddhists describe the ultimate pursuit as four types of bhava (approach). These Buddhists are known as the Secondary, Yogachar, Sautrantika and Vaibhashika and insist on these ideas or general principles, respectively.

### **The Life of Mahatma Gautama Buddha Introduction-** Mahatma

Buddha was born in 563 AD. HH. In Lumbini (Nepal) near Kapilvastu, the then capital of the Shakya Republic. His father's name was Shuddhodhana and his mother's name was Mahadevi. His childhood name was Siddhartha. His mind was not set on worldly things. That is why he saw an old man, a sick man, a dead man and a sanyasi and left the kingdom at the age of 29 in search of knowledge. Major events in the life of Mahatma Buddha- Mahabhiniskrama The event of the Buddha's life leaving home is called



**Figure5.4- Mahatma Gautama Buddha**

'Mahabhiniskrama' in Buddhist literature. Sambodhi: After meditating under the poplar tree for seven days to appease the curiosity of the mind, he attained 'Atmabodha' on the full moon of the month of Vaishakh and henceforth he became known as Buddha. The tree under which he sat became known as 'Bodhivriksha' and the place became known as 'Bodhgaya'. Which is in the state of Bihar. This event of life was called 'enlightenment'. Dharma Chakra Pravartana: After attaining enlightenment, Mahatma Buddha gave his first sermon at Sarnath to two Banjaras named Tapasu and Mallik, along with his five companions, and others. This is called 'Dharma Chakra Pravartana' in Buddhist texts. Mahaparinirvana: 483 BC Gautama Buddha gave up his body at Kushinagar near Gorakhpur at the age of 80. This phenomenon is called 'Mahaparinirvana'.

These include grammatical and theoretical views in the heinous tradition. Yoga and secondary thought are in the Mahayana tradition. People devoid of secondary consciousness believe that everything is zero. Yoga believes in the soul through feeling but regards external objects as zero. People devoid of Sautrantic sense believe in the soul and can perceive external objects by inference. Grammatically, the soul is devoid of emotion and can be understood as direct knowledge of external objects.

<b>Buddhist:</b>	<b>Debate</b>	<b>affection</b>
<b>1. Madhyamic</b>	All-emptiness	All is zero.
<b>2. Yogachara</b>	External meaninglessness	External substances are zero.
<b>3. Sautrantic</b>	External meaning inferentially	External objects can be known by inference.
<b>4. Vaibhashik</b>	externally direct	Knowledge of external objects can be understood directly.



The spread and development of Buddhist philosophy in the world began in the sixth century BC. It continued as a royal philosophy starting from 1000 AD till the reign of Emperor Ashoka. After Emperor Ashoka, Kanishka and Harshavardhana played a major role in the development of this philosophy. To spread Buddhist philosophy, Ashoka also expanded and spread Buddhist philosophy with eighty-four thousand stupas, pillars and inscriptions. This religion spread not only throughout India but also to Japan, Shyam (Thailand), Lanka, Afghanistan, Singapore and the western countries of Asia. Later, Buddhist philosophy disappeared from India. There were several reasons for this, including-

<b>Buddhist kings in India</b>		
<b>Ruler</b>	<b>Dynasties</b>	<b>Reign (c.)</b>
Ajatashatru	Haryanka dynasty	492 - 460 years BC
Ashoka	Mauya Dynasty	269 - 232 years BC
Kanishka	Kushan dynasty	78 AD - 103 AD
Harshvardhan	Vardhanavansha (Pushyabhuti)	606 AD - 647 AD

1. The scholars of Vedic (Hindu) philosophy replaced rituals with the path of knowledge and devotion taught in the Vedas, which made the essence of Buddhist philosophy unmanifest.
2. Many kings were also impressed by the knowledge of Vedic religion and philosophy and abandoned Buddhist philosophy and began to spread Vedic philosophy.
2. The decline of Buddhist philosophy was also caused by the invasions and plunder of the Huns, Mongols, Mohammed bin Qasim, Mahmud Ghaznavi, Mohammed Gauri, etc. from Central Asia. These invasions also had a profound impact on Indian culture.
3. During the colonial period, the education system of India was completely destroyed, which had a widespread impact on Indian society.

**Usefulness of Indian Philosophy-** The ancient and rich Indian thought tradition contains detailed and abundant material in every sphere of life. The influence of all branches of Vedic literature and philosophy, the original source of the tradition of knowledge and thought, is evident in the religious and cultural environment of India. The ultimate goal of Indian philosophies is the attainment of relief from suffering and supreme bliss through knowledge. The selfless karmaism inherent in Indian philosophy has always inspired Indian society towards spirituality. The principle of karma motivates society to follow the path of morality. This is described as 'Rit' in the Rig Veda in the seed form which is described as Karmavada in the Upanishats.

The Indian tradition of knowledge and philosophy has been famous and influential around the world, as it is a legacy of world welfare thought. For example, the theme of India's 'Logo' presiding over the G20 is 'Vasudevam Kutumbkam', meaning, and 'This entire globe is one family' This motto is taken

from the Mahopanishad, which affirms all kinds of life values, the interrelationships of the earth and the universe. The lotus flower in the 'logo' symbolizes our faith, intellectualism and Vedic heritage.

## Questions

### Multiple choice questions-

1. According to Manusmriti, what are the characteristics of Dharma?  
A. Five                      B. Seven                      C. Ten                      D. Eight
3. Vedic philosophy includes major philosophies-  
A. Five                      B. Seven                      C. Ten                      D. Eight
4. Vedic philosophy does not include any of the following-  
A. Justice                      B. Vaisheshika                      C. Vedanta                      D. Jain
5. The following is the theistic philosophy-  
A. Justice                      B. Jain                      C. Buddhist                      D. Charvak
6. is the initiator of Buddhist philosophy-  
A. Badrayan                      B. Gautama Buddha  
C. Rishabhdev                      D. Ashoka

### Fill in the blanks -

1. Under Charvak philosophy, ..... is not considered to be the essence.  
(Sky/Water)
2. The eightfold path to attain salvation is mentioned.  
(Yoga philosophy/Buddhist philosophy)
3. For the attainment of salvation..... Five Mahavrata are mentioned.  
(Jain philosophy / Buddhist philosophy)
4. According to Manusmriti, the characteristics of religion are stated.  
(Eight/ten)
5. Ajatashatru was the famous Buddhist ruler of.....  
(Haryanka dynasty/Maurya dynasty)

### Tell true/false-

1. Patanjali is the chief initiator of the philosophy of Nyaya. (True/False)
2. Buddhist philosophy describes five senses. (True/False)
3. Atheist philosophy believes in the proof of the Vedas. (True/False)
4. The Buddha has described the eightfold path to attain salvation. (True/False)
5. Charvak means sweet speech. (True/False)

### Match the right-pair-

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. The initiators of the philosophy of justice | A. Kapil             |
| 2. Initiators Of Buddhist Philosophy           | B. Kanada            |
| 3. Initiator Of Vaisheshika Philosophy         | C. Akshapada Gautama |
| 4. Initiator Of Sankhya Philosophy             | D. Gautama Buddha    |
| 5. Initiators Of Mimansa Philosophy            | E. Jaimini           |

### Very short answer question-

1. Why the Mimansa Sutra by Jaimini is called Dwadasa Lakshni?
2. Who is the initiator of the philosophy of justice?
3. What do you understand by Ashtanga Yoga?

- 
4. How many elements are mentioned in Sankhya philosophy?
  5. How many elements are considered in Charvaka philosophy?

### **Short answer questions-**

1. Write a brief comment on yoga philosophy.
2. Briefly mention the various views of Vaisheshika philosophy.
3. Briefly explain the three major branches of Vedanta philosophy.
4. Mention the sevenfold judgment.

### **Long answer questions-**

1. What do you understand by philosophy? Briefly describe Vedic philosophy.
2. Highlight Jain philosophy and its major principles.
3. Explain Buddhist philosophy in detail.



## Chapter 6 Industrial Revolution

**In this chapter-** Period of Industrialization, Industrialization, Social Effects of Industrialization, Economic Effects of Industrialization, Starting of Factories, Changes in the Life of Workers, Era of Textile Industry in India, Starting of Factories in India, Urbanization, Status of Women, India In Print Culture, Urbanization in India.

**Period of industrialization-** In their daily lives, many people must have seen abandoning their old method of working and using resources under new modern techniques. Using these resources makes the work easier and the product increases. Industrialization refers to the development of factories, their production and the workers working in them. Even before the establishment of factories in the world, there was a large-scale production for the international market, so this period is called the **period of industrialization**.

The E.T. Paul Music Company published a music book in 1900, with a picture on the screen announcing the '**Dawn of the Century**'. As you can see in this picture, there is a goddess-like image in the center of the picture. This goddess is a symbol of progress, with the new century flag in her hand. One of its leg's rests on the winged wheel. This wheel is a symbol of time. Her flight is towards the future. Behind it are signs of advancement, railways, cameras, machines, printing presses and factories. In this chapter, we will study the industrial revolution and understand the impact of industrialization.



Fig- 6.1 Dawn of the century

**Industrialization-** Industrialization is a process in which modern technology is used. The aim of which is to increase the means of production, to depend on machines instead of human labor and to raise the standard of living in minimum labor. Through this, the dependence of humans on machines increases and human control over nature increases. Industrialization is not a process that is confined to factories, but it is basically an economic process in which production is increased through machines.

Industrialization and urbanization are two sides of a coin i.e. there is no difference in the socio-cultural effects arising out of industrialization and urbanization. The process of industrialization leads to the development of cities

rapidly. Where industrialization takes place, people start coming for employment and it is a mistake to increase the population.

### **Social Impact of Industrialization-**

1. **Increase in crimes-** As a result of industrialization, there is an increase in crimes. Because people from rural society start coming to the industrial sector for employment. They are unaware of the environment they get due to stress and anxiety. Here they find lack informal relation. That's why they are full form addictions like alcohol.
2. **Increase in modernization-** Industrialization leads to increase in modernization. Because in industrialization, the use of new technology in production, new markets, means of transportation, etc. create the background of modernization.
3. **Change in the status of women-** Like urbanization, industrialization also changes the status of women. Industrialization has provided equal opportunities for education and employment to women. Due to which women are becoming self-reliant in social and economic.
4. **Dissolution of joint families-** Due to the effect of industrialization, the joint family is disintegrating. People are coming to industrial areas in search of employment, due to which cities are developing. As a result, joint families are being converted into nuclear families.

### **Economic Impact of Industrialization-**

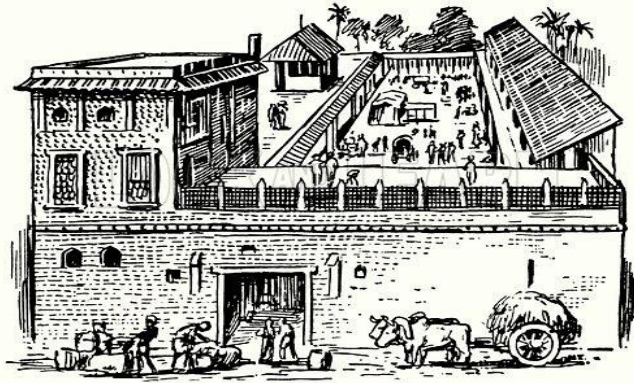
1. Capitalism is increasing as a result of industrialization. Because only capitalists can run big factories.
2. The importance of division of labor and specialization of industrialization is increasing in the society.
3. Industrialization has also given rise to the problem of unemployment.
4. Working conditions of workers in large factories are still unsatisfactory. Due to which various types of diseases and physical accidents occur.
5. Industrialization has changed the standard of living of the people.
6. Industrialization is leading to the decline of cottage industries.

**Opening of Factories-** The construction of factories in England began in the 1730s and by the end of the 18th century, factories began to appear in many places throughout England. As a result, production increased tremendously. The main reason for the increase in this production was the increase in many machine inventions and work efficiency in the 18th century. The opening of factories increased the income and efficiency of the workers. Mechanization made it easier to monitor and take work from workers in factories and factories. First of all, the impact of industrialization was mainly in the textile industry.

At the beginning of the industrial revolution, the machines were not of quality, due to which their maintenance proved to be expensive, so any industrialist was hesitant to invest in new machines. Due to the high number of workers and low wage rates, businessmen and industrialists were better off taking

work from workers. Hand-made things were more in demand as they were refined. Due to the shortage of workers in America, mechanization was the only option for them.

**Changes in the Lives of Workers-** Due to the industrial revolution, people from villages were migrating to cities in search of employment. Workers had to



**Fig. 6.2: An English factory in Surat, seventeenth century**

wait for a long time to get work. These people had to spend nights on footpaths, bridges or rain shelters. The **Poor Law Authority** was created for the poor, which arranged casual wards for homeless people. The demand for workers in various industries was seasonal, so the workers became unemployed after the season passed. Some of them would return to their villages, and some stayed in the cities in search of work. In the

early 19th century, there was a slight increase in wages, which was much lower than the inflation rate, so there was no change in the standard of living of the laborers. By the middle of the 19th century, even in the good period of the economy, about 10% of the population of cities lived in extreme poverty. During the economic recession, the unemployment rate had fallen between 35% and 75%. Workers often opposed new technology and mechanization for fear of unemployment. After the 1840s, new employment opportunities began as building construction accelerated in cities. The number of workers in the transport industry doubled in 1840 and doubled again in the next thirty years.

**Era of textile industry in India-** Before industrialization, Indian cotton fabrics were in great demand in the international market due to good quality. There was a strong system of Indian traders at various ports. By the middle of the 18th century, due to the expansion of the East India Company's business in India, the old centers of trade (Surat, Hooghly) had collapsed and Kolkata, Mumbai etc. emerged as new centers. After establishing political dominance in India, the East India Company monopolized the trade. The company started hiring some people (gumashta) in order to take direct control over Indian weavers. Its job was to monitor the weavers, collect the goods and check the quality of the fabric. Gumashta was an outsider. He also used to torture the weavers on the strength of his spies and associates. Therefore, there was always a situation of confrontation between the weavers and the Gumashta. After taking an advance loan, the weavers did not have enough time to work on their farm. Therefore, they used to give their land to the cultivators for farming. Many weavers were trapped in debt, so they were forced to flee their village. Some people left the work of weaving and started farming.

**Arrival of Manchester (Foreign Fabric) in India-** Indian cotton textiles were famous all over the world due to their high quality. These textiles were in such demand in the markets that the then-British officer Henry Patulo (1772) had said that no country in the world made better cloth than India. So, this cloth will never end up in the markets. Then what were the reasons why such an advanced textile industry in India was heading towards decline? From the beginning of the nineteenth century, the export of textiles from India started declining. In 1811-12 AD, cotton cloth accounted for 33% of India's exports, which came down to only 3% in 1850-51 AD. Under pressure from the industrialists of England, the government-imposed customs duty in England. Due to which the import of cloth was stopped and the East India Company was pressured to sell things made in England to the Indian markets. By the end of the 18th century, the import of cotton textiles in India was negligible, which increased to 31% by 1850 AD and by the 1870s, this fraction had increased to 70%. The main reason for this was the cloth made in the mills of Manchester. It was cheaper than a fabric made from India's handlooms. Due to this, the business of weavers started falling. As a result, by the 1850s, there was a huge recession in most cotton textile centers in India. In the 1860s, due to the outbreak of civil war in the United States, the supply of cotton from there to England had stopped. Due to this, cotton from India started being exported to England. The effect of this was that there was a huge shortage of raw cotton for India's weavers.

**Establishment of factories in India-** By the end of the 19th century, cotton textile factories started opening in India. The first textile mill in India was established in Mumbai in 1854 AD. After this, many cotton mills were established in India and during this time jute mills were also started in Bengal. These mills were established in places where there was availability of raw materials and cheap laborers could be found. The demand for workers also increased due to the gradual increase in the number of mills. Often these workers came from nearby areas. The factory owners hired force to recruit laborers, who were trusted and loyal to them and it helped the workers arrange housing etc. in the city. The establishment of mills increased the demand for workers, which led to urbanization.

**Urbanization-** If the main means of employment is not the agriculture, is not the main means of employment then that place is called a city. Large cities are called metropolises which are the centers of political power, culture and economic activities. Urbanization is a long process, but the history of the rise of modern cities is not more than 200 years old. Due to the industrial revolution, urbanization got a boost, the main consequences of which are as follows:

**Rise of modern cities-** Even after several decades of the industrial revolution, most western countries were rural. With the opening of textile mills at the end of the 18th century, people from villages started migrating to cities, which gradually increased urbanization. As a result, new cities such as Leeds and Manchester

developed. In 1851, more than three quarters of Manchester's population consisted of laborers from villages. London was already a big city. By the mid-18th century, one in nine people from England and Wales lived in London. There was no major factory or factory in London, yet the city was the main center of the villagers. Most of the employment opportunities were in London's dockyard. Apart from this, people also got work in textiles, shoes, and wood, furniture, metal, engineering, printing and precision instruments. During World War I (1914 to 1919), large factories began in London with the beginning of car and electrical products manufacturing.

**Status of women-** Industrialization, technological development and World War I led to a large number of women losing their jobs. Now such women had to work as domestic servants to raise the family, while some women started doing small jobs like sewing and weaving. Child labor was also a major problem during this period. Children from poor families were engaged in low-paying tasks so that the family could be raised. Two laws aimed at preventing child labor were introduced-

1. Compulsory Education Act of 1870.
2. The Factories Act of 1902.

**Printing culture in India-** Since ancient times, bhojpatra and palm paper etc. were the form of paper industry and hand printing. Manuscripts were written on



Figure- 6.3 Manuscripts

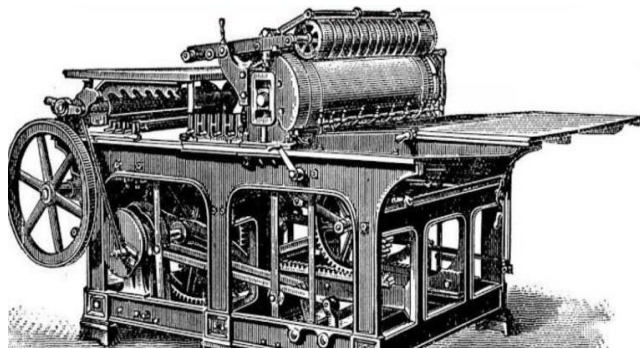


Fig. 6.4 The first printing press in modern

them in many languages. Whenever sages or saints of India used to go on pilgrimages or Kumbh, etc., they used to describe the scenes there by themselves or their followers in manuscripts. In this way, he used to write in manuscripts the nature, history and characteristics of wherever he roamed. These manuscripts were

very expensive and soft, so extreme care had to be taken in their maintenance.

The first printing press in modern India was installed on December 6, 1556. This press was sent from Portugal to Obicinia (present-day Ethiopia), but in those days the Suez Canal was not built. That's why had to go to Obsinia via India. But for some reason, this press remained in Goa instead of OBCNIA and in 1557 St. Xavier published a book called 'Daktrina Kristao'. The art of printing in India expanded extensively in Bengal. In 1778, the grammar of Bengali language was printed in Hooghly. Tamil languages were the first to be typed in Indian languages. The types of Nagari script were first created in Europe. China



Illustrata by Asthanasi Kincheri is the first book published in 1675, which was printed in Nagari script. In 1771, a book was published in Rome and it is considered to be the first alphabet book of the Khadi dialect. In India, the father of the Bengali and Nagari type were two people Charles Wilkinson and Panchanan Karmakar. Charles Wilkinson was the first person to publish a bengali grammar in 1778. After that, in 1779 AD, the first book was printed in Devanagari script, the **grammar of The Indian language**, it was printed by Gilchrist.

**Urbanization in India-** The history of cities in India is not new. Examples of

### Use of printing culture in India's independence

1. Information about its oppressive steps taken towards government wrong rules, freedom of the press to stop nationalist sentiments etc. was published in newspapers and magazines.
2. Information about the methods of exploitation of the colonial government was given to the public through linguistic newspapers.
3. Revolutionary ideas were also spread through print culture.
4. National newspapers always propagated and disseminated the point of view of the Indian public.
5. Information about the principles of 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' spreading in Europe came from the printing culture.
6. Indians got an opportunity to understand western civilization and culture by studying English books. We have been forced to think that when there is democracy in England, India too has a right to independence.
7. Print culture developed the culture of communication among the people. The new ideas of social reform were now communicated to the people in a much better way.
8. Gandhiji began to express the meaning of Swadeshi in a more powerful way through newspapers. Despite many repressive policies, print culture was a movement that could not be stopped.

many cities are also found in Vedic linguistic and river valley civilizations. Among the cities of that time were Ayodhya, Indraprastha, Hastinapur Mohenjo daro and Harappa Pataliputra, Purushpur (Peshawar) etc. Over time, the size and complexities of cities changed. Similarly, modern cities, especially metros, are very different from ancient cities in terms of size and complexity. Cities have always been centers of many activities such as political power, administrative machinery, industry, religious institutions, intellectual activities, markets, etc. New Delhi, the capital of India, is an example of one such city where political power, administrative machinery, industry, religious institutions, intellectual activities, markets, etc. are all activities. But if we look at cities like Durgapur, Bhilai, Bokaro, there are mainly activities related to industry, while on the other

hand, in cities like Banaras, Mathura, Ujjain, Tirupati etc., there is mainly activity of religious institutions. It is clear from these examples that each city has its own specialty.

Thus, we understand that the beginning of industrialization led to the development of modern cities and later this process was also influenced by the spread of democracy and colonization. The rise of industrial capitalism, the establishment of colonial rule over a large part of the world and the development of democratic ideals, these three historical processes have played a decisive role in shaping the structure of modern cities.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Question-

1. When was the first factory established in England?  
A. In the 1860s  
B. in the 1790s  
C. In the 1640s  
D. in the 1730s.
2. Which industry was first effected by industrialization?  
A. Textile industry  
B. Leather industry  
C. Iron Industry on  
D. Glass Industry
3. When was the first textile mill of India established?  
A. Kolkata  
B. Chennai  
C. Mumbai  
D. Surat

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Manchester is Famous for the industry..... (Textiles/Cement)
2. Increase in demand for workers.....got a boost.  
(Industrialization/Urbanization)
3. Bhilai is Famous as..... (Industrial Town/Tourist Town)
4. Printing press In India came in..... (1549/1556)
5. For writing in ancient times was used..... (Banquet letter/ leaves)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Industrialization did not change much in employment opportunities.  
(True/False)
2. Surat was an old center of trade.  
(True/False)
3. From the beginning of the 19th century, the export of textiles from India started increasing.  
(True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Jute Mill           | A. For Child Labor |
| 2. Factory Act of 1902 | B. West Bengal     |
| 3. Pooler Law          | C. For the poor    |
| 4. Printing press      | D. Goa             |

### Very short question-

1. What is the period of industrialization?
2. Why was there more demand for Indian cotton fabric in the international Market before industrialization?

- 
3. What were the functions of Gumashta?
  4. What is a metropolis?
  5. Name two cities of England famous for textile industry.
  6. What laws should be made to prevent child labor?
  7. What is Manuscript?

### **Short Answer Questions-**

1. Explain the social and economic impact of industrialization.
2. What are the benefits of opening factories?
3. What was the impact of Manchester in India?
4. Why was London the main center of the villagers?
5. What do you understand by printing?

### **Long Answer Questions-**

1. Describe the textile industry era of India.
2. Write essays on the lives of workers.
3. What activities are cities? Explain.
4. Describe in detail the printing culture of India.

### **Project-**

1. Choose an industry in your area and find out its history.



## Chapter - 7

### National Movement and Independence in India

**In this chapter-** Struggles and movements of nationalists, Boycott and Swadeshi Movement, Rowlatt Act, Jallianwala Bagh Massacre, Khilafat Movement, Non-Cooperation Movement, Establishment of Swarajya Dal, Demonstration against Simon Commission, Salt March and Civil Disobedience Movement, Gandhi-Irwin Compromise, Quit India Movement, Partition of India and attainment of independence.

India was called the golden bird and was the most prosperous country in the world; hence foreigners were always attracted. Foreigners came here yearning for its prosperity and destroyed the unity and integrity of India, but countless individuals, institutions and events have contributed to the history of the national movement for India's independence. Through the love, sacrifice, and sacrifice of the revolutionaries of our country, India liberated the country in their own ways by give a new direction and momentum to the freedom movement. In this chapter, we will study in detail the major movements for independence.

The concept of nationalism is mentioned in Vedic literature. The word nation symbolizes a well-meaning feeling. In Yajurveda, the desire for the welfare of the nation is mentioned in this mantra- राष्ट्रं राजन्यः शूर इष्व्योऽतिव्याधि महारथो जायताम्। (Yaju. 28/22), अभि वर्धतां पयसाभि राष्ट्रेण वर्धताम्। (Atharva. 6/78/2) That is, our nation should have heroes, archers, maharathi, etc. In Atharvaveda also, it has been prayed for the nation to be enriched with wealth, milk, etc. This verse from Valmiki Ramayana- अपि स्वर्णमयी लंका न मे रोचते लक्ष्मण। जननी जन्मभूमिश्च स्वर्गादपि गरीयसी ॥ Nationalism is the feeling of love, pride and unity among the people living in the geographical culture and society of our nation. In Vedic literature, the words empire, swarajya, rajya(state), maharajya etc. have been used for the nation. Nation refers to a particular land segment where people are bound by a particular culture. Those countries which have the power to assimilate even the countrymen are called nations. The essential elements of the nation are land, population, sovereignty, civilization and culture, language and literature, pride in national heritage and national unity. The basis of national unity and integrity in Vedic literature is humanity and public welfare and the ideal of Indian culture is वसुधैव कुटुम्बकम्. Indian mystics have wished for humanity and public welfare and said - सर्वे भवन्तु सुखिनः सर्वे सन्तु निरामयाः सर्वे भद्राणि पश्यन्तु मा कश्चिद् दुः ख भाग भवेत्. (पद्मपुराण) means that everyone should be happy, everyone should be healthy, everyone should see each other with a happy mind and no one should suffer. Such a sense of equality (R. 5/60/5) is also mentioned.

**Struggles and Movements of Nationalists-** In the 19th century, there were many social religious reform movements to remove the evils prevalent in Indian religion and society such as Brahma Samaj, Arya Samaj, Prarthana Samaj, Ramakrishna Mission, Bahishkrit Hitkarini Sabha, Singh Sabha etc. These

movements instilled feelings of self-respect, self-pride and self-sacrifice among Indians and a sense of pride for their nation, religion and culture was born, which led to the struggle against imperialism. As a result, fighting nationalists like Lal, Bal, Pal created a huge wave of nationalism, love for the country and self-rule all over India. Lal, Bal, Pal and Arvind Ghosh played the lead roles. In the novel *Anandmath* written by **Bankim Chandra Chatterjee**, the song '**Vande Mataram**' was composed which gave birth to the feeling of nationalism and swaraj among millions of Indians and sowed the seeds of revolutionary ideas and struggles in them. Maharishi **Arvind Ghosh** called India a **living cultural and spiritual nation**. The spirit of revolution in Bengal was born due to his efforts. The country became independent due to the struggles and movements of the nationalists.

Mahatma Gandhi's entry into the political arena of India was indicative of the beginning of the new era. After 1919, Mahatma Gandhi gave a new look to Indian politics and national movement. After this, there were many movements under his leadership.

**Boycott and Swadeshi Movement-** The most imprudent decision of Lord Curzon's reign was the partition of Bengal. At that time Bengal included Bengal, Bihar, Assam and Orissa. This was a huge province of India. Lord Curzon was of the opinion that from administrative point of view it was not possible to rule a huge province efficiently. To justify this, Curzon planned to divide Bengal.

Despite widespread public opposition, the British government announced the decision to divide Bengal on July 19, 1905. The 'Swadeshi' and 'Boycott' movements were born in protest against the Partition of Bengal. As a result, public meetings were held all over Bengal, in which decisions were taken to use indigenous i.e. Indian goods and boycott British goods. Holi for foreign clothes was lit at many places and sit-ins were held at shops selling foreign clothes. The Swadeshi movement was quite successful. In protest, another mode of struggle was adopted and a pledge was taken to boycott foreign goods everywhere.

The opposition to the partition of Bengal had a deep impact on the Indian National Congress. There was intense public debate and disagreement between moderate and extremist nationalists. The extremists wanted to extend the Swadeshi boycott to the entire country beyond Bengal and boycott any association with the colonial government. The moderates wanted to limit the boycott only to Bengal and even there only to foreign goods. The differences between the two sects kept increasing and finally in the Surat session in 1907, the National Congress was divided into two parts. The moderate leaders were successful in capturing the Congress organization and expelling the extremists from it. But ultimately no party benefited from the partition of Bengal. The moderates lost touch with the new generation of nationalists. As a result, the British government also adopted the policy of 'divide and rule' and tried to suppress extremist nationalists and bring moderates to its side.

**Rowlett Act-** In order to end the influence of revolutionaries in India and crush national sentiment, the British Government appointed a committee under the chairmanship of Judge 'Sir Sidney Rowlett', and the committee submitted its report in 1918 AD. These bills were known as the Rowlett Act. Despite opposition from Indians, this bill was implemented on March 8, 1919 AD. The Rowlett Act was passed by the British government with the aim of taking away the right to early hearing and appeal in the cases of revolutionaries.

- Under this, the government got the right to detain any person on suspicion of seditious activities, to take bail from him and to ban other works without trial.
- In this, the government was given the powers to search and arrest revolutionaries without a warrant. Whose decisions could not be appealed?

There were strikes all over the country in protest against the government's repression policy.

**Jallianwala Bagh massacre-** There was a lot of anger among the people there due to the ban on the entry of Gandhi ji and other leaders. In The Punjab outrage escalated when two popular Punjab leaders, Dr Satyapal and Dr Saifuddin Kitchlu, were arrested by the Deputy Commissioner of Amritsar for no reason. In protest, the public took out a peaceful procession. Police stopped the procession from proceeding further but if they failed to stop it, they were ordered to open fire.



**Figure 7.1 Jallianwala Bagh massacre**

The procession then turned violent, damaging government property. Seeing the situation in Amritsar, the government handed over the administration of the city to army officer O. Dyer on April 10, 1919. The events and demonstrations of the meeting were banned. The information was not given to the public. Therefore, on April 13, 1919, at around 4:30 p.m., a general meeting was held at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar. About 10,000 people attended.

General Dyer arrived at the gathering venue with about 400 armed soldiers and opened fire on the crowd without prior warning until the bullets were finished, killing thousands and wounding a large number. General Dyer was removed from the post. Between 1919 and 1922, two movements were launched against the British-the Khilafat Movement and the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Khilafat Movement-** In the First World War, England defeated Turkey and tortured the people there. It was decided to remove Khalifa from his post. The Muslims of India strongly condemned the British for this work in Turkey and opposed the British. In India, the Khilafat Committee was formed in 1919 under the leadership of Mohammad Ali, Shaukat Ali, and Maulana Azad. The main

objective of this was to oppose the removal of the Caliph of Turkey from office by the British and to hurt the sentiments of Muslims. Gandhi ji and members the Congress pledged full support to the Muslims in the Khilafat movement.

**Non-Cooperation Movement-** In the First World War, Indians fully cooperated with the British. Due to Gandhi ji' support for the British during the war, he was given the title of '**Kaiser-e-Hind**'. Gandhi ji was in favor of full cooperation with the British, but due to some events that took place after 1918 AD, he became uncooperative with his allies.

1. Replacing the promises made by the British government during the war.
2. Various types of restrictions were imposed on the Indian public through the Rowlett Act.
3. Jallianwala Bagh massacre.
4. India's miserable economic condition, unemployment and excessive rise in commodity prices after the First World War.
5. The question of khilafat.

In December 1920, Gandhi ji proposal for non-cooperation was accepted at the Nagpur session of the Congress. The movement was to be carried out completely peacefully. There was non-cooperation with the government at every level.

The non-cooperation movement soon became popular among the masses.

About 10,000 students dropped out of school and college. Institutions like Kashi Vidyapeeth, Bihar Vidyapeeth, and Maharashtra Vidyapith etc. were established. The non-cooperation movement was getting success all over the country, there was immense enthusiasm among children, youth, old people and women. Among those who gave up advocacy, Pt. Motilal Nehru,



**Fig. 7.2 Non-Cooperation Movement**

M.R. Jayakar, C.R. Das, Vallabhbai Patel etc. were prominent. During the peaceful movement, the repression of the government also continued. Apart from Gandhi ji, all the major Congress leaders were imprisoned. Demonstrations were held on the arrival of the Prince of Wales in India.

Gandhi ji sent an ultimatum to the Viceroy on February 1, 1922 that if the prisoners were not released immediately and the cycle of repression was not stopped immediately, a civil disobedience movement would be started, but in the meantime, on February 5, a police station named Chauri-Chaura in Uttar Pradesh was set on fire. In this incident, 21 soldiers, including a police officer, were burned to death. This incident is known as Chauri-Chaura Kand. In 1922, Gandhi withdrew from this movement, being violently saddened. Therefore, the Non-Cooperation Movement lasted from 1920 to 1922.

---

**Establishment of Swarajya Dal-** The establishment of Swarajya Dal can be understood as a response to the suspension of the Non-Cooperation Movement. After the non-cooperation movement, the national consciousness was at its peak among the people. Chittaranjan Das and Pandit Motilal Nehru formed the Swarajya Dal. Chittaranjan Das became its president. The main objectives of Swarajya Dal - to achieve Swarajya. Obstructing government work. To oppose the policies of the British. Develop national consciousness. Entering into councils by contesting elections.

In the Central Assembly, members of the Swarajya Dal (Vithalbai, Chittaranjan Das, and Pandit Motilal Nehru) and other allies formed a united front with the Swatantra Dal and presented their demands to the government. Their work was hampered when the government did not accept them. After 1926 AD, Swarajya dal was dissolved.

**Demonstration against the Simon Commission-** While passing the Act of 1919, the British Government announced that it would review these reforms again after 10 years. But in November 1927, a commission was appointed. Sir John Simon was made its president. All seven of its members were English. It is known as the '**Simon 'Commission'**'. There was not a single Indian in this commission, The things that this commission was asked to consider, did not give The Indian people had no hope of getting Swaraj.

The Simon Commission arrived in India in February 1928. A nationwide strike welcomed him. Even a majority of the members of the Central Assembly boycotted the commission. Committees were formed all over the country to oppose the commission so that wherever it went, demonstrations and strikes could be organized against it. The slogan of the strikers was '**Simon go back**' at many places, the police beat up peaceful protesters. The protest in Punjab was led by Lala Lajpat Rai. Lala Lajpat Rai was injured as a result of the British lathi charge and later died. Finally the Simon Commission went back.

**Salt March and Civil Disobedience Movement-** Gandhi ji wrote a letter to Viceroy Irwin on January 31, 1930 regarding 11 demands ranging from industrialists to farmers. According to this, Gandhi ji considered government control and taxation on salt production as the most oppressive aspects of British rule. Mahatma Gandhi warned the British government through a letter that all their demands should be accepted by March 11, 1930, otherwise the Civil Disobedience Movement would have started. Due to the attention given to these demands by Irwin, on March 12, 1930, Gandhi ji started the Salt March with his 78 trusted followers. Which is also known as Dandi March or Dandi Satyagraha. The march was to start from Sabarmati Ashram (Ahmedabad) and end at a village called Dandi. Gandhi ji completed this 240 km long journey in 24 days. On April 6, 1930, the salt law was violated by Gandhi ji by making salt at a place called Dandi. After breaking the salt law, the civil disobedience movement started all over the country. In the first round of the Civil Disobedience Movement, there



---

were incidents of breaking the salt law all over the country. Breaking the salt law became a symbol of opposition to the government.

As the civil disobedience movement was gained momentum, the cycle of government repression was also increasing. Incidents of lathi-charge and firing took place at many places. About 100,000 people were put in jail. Many people were killed by police bullets. For the first time, women participated openly in this movement.

**Gandhi-Irwin Pact-** Gandhi ji was imprisoned on May 5, 1930 AD to stop the aggression of the movement. But the movement continued. The government released Gandhi from jail on January 26, 1931 and the Gandhi Irwin Pact was signed between the two on March 5, 1931. The movement was postponed for some time by agreement. Gandhi accepted to attend the Second Round Table Conference. The government freed the agitators from the jails.

Gandhi ji went to London in September 1931 to attend the Second Round Table Conference. Due to the obstinacy of the British government, the conference failed and Gandhi ji came back to India. Gandhi ji resumed the civil disobedience movement again Civil Disobedience Movement.

**Major Events (1932-1942)** - The solution to the communal problem was found by the Poona Pact between Dr. Babasaheb Bhim Rao Ambedkar. 'Between' 1930 AD to 1934 AD, many events had taken place. The civil disobedience movement continued well till 1932 AD. But after that it almost ended and in 1934 AD it was announced to withdraw.

- According to the Act of 1935 AD, elections were held in the provinces in 1937 AD. The Congress succeeded in 7 of the 11 provinces and formed provincial governments.
- World War II began with Germany's invasion from Poland on September 1, 1939.
- The Congress was very angry with Britain's inclusion of India in the war without any reason, without the consent of the Indians.
- Due to the demand of Indians, Lord Linlithgow proposed a proposal on August 8, 1940, which is known as the August Proposal. The resolution reiterated that colonial self-rule would be established in India after the war.
- On March 23, 1940, the annual session of the Muslim League was held in Lahore. In which Pakistan's resolution was passed. The resolution states that the states "geographically connected with each other, the states should be formed with necessary changes in such a way that the Muslim community becomes a majority." '

**Cripps Mission-** During the Second World War, the British were desperate for the active and full cooperation of India. In this situation, Sir Stafford Cripps, a member of the British Wartime Cabinet of England was sent to India with some concrete assurance for the present 'self-rule' for the Indians and some concrete assurance for the future.

**Quit India Movement-** In April 1942 AD, the failure of the Cripps Mission and its resulting disappointment once again created a situation of frustration in the country. On August 8, 1942, the All-India Congress Committee held in Mumbai passed a resolution. The resolution declared that it has become imperative to end the British government in India soon. Gandhi ji gave the slogan 'Do or Die', which was heard everywhere. On August 9, 1942, most of the Congress leaders were arrested and locked up in various jails of the country. As a result, the movement took a violent form, but due to government repression, the Quit India Movement could not last long.

**Partition of India and Independence-** The British government announced in 1946 that it wanted to end its rule in India. A team of the British Cabinet, known as the Cabinet Mission, came to India to talk to Indian leaders about the dissolution of the military. The government proposed to form an interim government and call for a Constituent Assembly. An interim government was formed under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru.

The Muslim League did not initially join this government, but later it joined. The Constituent Assembly started the constitution-making work in December 1946. But the Muslim League refused to participate in it. On February 21, 1947, Lord Mountbatten was appointed as the new Viceroy of India by the British Government, making an important policy announcement. He presented a plan on June 3, 1947, which is called the Mountbatten Plan. Under this scheme, India was approved to be divided into two nations India and Pakistan. In the Mountbatten Plan, it was decided that on August 15, 1947, India and Pakistan would transfer power as full sovereign nations. The paralysis of the interim government, the tide of communal violence, the stubbornness of the Muslim League, the compulsion of Congress leaders and British diplomacy resulted in the partition of India.

On July 18, 1947, the Indian Independence Act was approved and the country was divided into two nations India and Pakistan. Finally, on August 15, 1947, India became independent. The first Prime Minister of independent India, Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru was created.

At the core of the rise of national sentiment in India were joint struggles and cultural processes against the British. History, literature, folk tales, pictures, etc. also made valuable contributions to realizing nationalism. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay first portrayed Bharat Mata in India as the identity of the nation. In the 1870s, he wrote the song **Vande Mataram**. In 1905, Bharat Mata was portrayed by Abanindranath Thakur. In this picture, the image of **BHART MATA** was calm, serious, and divine and coordinated with spiritual qualities. Both these works played an important role in awakening nationalism in India. Symbols began to be used to keep nationalist leaders united and instill a sense of nationalism in them. The tricolor flag was created during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal. It has eight lotus flowers and a crescent moon, symbolizing

eight kingdoms and Hindu-Muslim unity respectively. After this, Gandhi ji charkha was considered a symbol of self-reliance.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which of the following is the movement started by Gandhi ji-  
A. Quit India Movement  
B. Non-Cooperation Movement  
C. Civil Disobedience Movement  
D. All Above
2. In which movement did Gandhi give the slogan of 'do or die'?  
A. In Salt Journey  
B. Civil Disobedience Movement  
C. Quit India Movement in  
D. Non-Cooperation Movement
3. When did the Chauri-Chaura Kanda (Incident) happened-  
A. In 1942  
B. In 1922  
C. In 1930  
D. in 1920
4. In July 1947, the British Parliament passed the Indian Independence Act According to which two independent countries was built.  
A. India-Bangladesh  
B. India-Pakistan  
C. India-Sri Lanka  
D. India-Nepal
5. When the Gandhi ji break the salt law-  
A. April 19, 1930  
B. April 6, 1930  
C. March 12, 1930  
D. March 9, 1930
6. Which of the following was the purpose of the Rowlett Act.  
A. To Declare All Strikes Illegal  
B. To Establish Equality Among  
C. Suppression of Agitators  
D. All of The Above

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Rowlett Act Law was enacted under the under the chairmanship of.  
(Sidney Rowlett/George Rowlett)
2. Jallianwala Bagh is located in..... (Ludhiana/Amritsar)
3. In 1905, The Province of Bengal included Bengal..... Orissa.  
(Assam/Jharkhand)
4. Mahatma Gandhi gave the slogan of .....  
(Quit India Movement/Civil Movement)

### Tell the truth/ false-

1. Modern nationalism is a new concept. (True/False)
2. The Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed in 1935. (True/False)
3. There were 78 followers in Dandi yatra with Gandhi. (True/False)
4. Vande Mataram song written by Rabindranath Tagore (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Non-Cooperation Movement    | A. 1942 |
| 2. Quit India Movement         | B. 1930 |
| 3. Civil Disobedience Movement | C. 1920 |
| 4. Bharat Mata                 | D. 1905 |

### Very short answer question-

1. When and why was the Division of Bengal done?



- 
2. What do you understand by nationalism?
  3. Who portrayed Bharat Mata?
  4. What do you understand by Rowlett Act?
  5. When did Jallianwala Bagh massacre take place?
  6. When did the Quit India Movement begin?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What do you know about the Rowlett Act?
2. What were the reasons for the civil disobedience movement?
3. What do you know about the revolutionaries, what methods did they adopt against the British rule?
4. What is Gandhi-Irwin Pact?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. Describe Gandhi's salt journey and civil disobedience movement.
2. What do you know about Gandhi ji non-cooperation movement?
3. Throw light on the partition of India and the attainment of independence.
4. Write an essay on the national movement of India and the attainment of independence.

### Project-

1. Draw a picture of Bharat Mata and the national flag.
2. Collected pictures related to the Indian National Movement and made school albums.



## Chapter 8

### Building a Landlocked World

**In this chapter-** Meaning of Globalization or Globalization, Thoughts of Globalization in Vedic Literature, Silk Road, Globalization in Modern Times, Rise of World Economy, Rinderpest or Cattle Plague, Indian Trade, Colonization and Global Order, Great Depression, Great Depression and India.

**Meaning of Globalization-** Globalization literally means the process of global transformation of local or regional goods or events globally. It is a process by which people all over the world form a society in which we all work together. This process is a combination of economic, technological, social and political forces. Modern globalization is used in the context of economic globalization i.e. integration of the national economy into the international economy through trade, foreign direct investment, capital flows, migration and the spread of industrialization.

**Thought of globalization in Vedic literature-** Today, when there is a discussion about global village, world village or globalization, this idea is usually about that economic system for the last 50-60 years, but it is not a new concept for India. Globalization is mentioned in the following mantras in Vedic literature. यत्र विश्वं भवत्येकनीडम्. (Yaju. 32/8) That is, living in the nest of the world, let us see the Lord in our heart cavity. Evidence of introducing the nature of land degradation is found not only in the social background, but also in the यदधिना ऊहथुर्भुज्युमस्तं शतारित्रां नावमातस्थिवांसम्. (Rig. 1-116-5) That is, when Bhriju's ship sank in the sea, Ashwini kumars rescued him in a ship with a hundred hulls. Thus, it is clear from this mantra that the policy of globalization had started in Vedic literature and India had trade relations with foreign countries. Swashwa स्वश्वा सिन्धुः सुरथा सुवासा हिरण्ययी सुकृता वाजिनीवती. ऊर्णावती युवतिः सीलमाव त्युताधि वस्ते सुभगा मधुवृधम् ॥ (Rig. 10/75/8) उपोप मे परा मृश मा मे दभ्राणी मन्यथाः. सर्वाहमस्मि रोमशा गन्धारीणामिवाविका ॥ (Rig. 1-126-7) The above mantras prove that the watery horses of the Indus region, powerful chariots and woolen clothes and the beautiful wool of Gandhara were famous all over the world. जनं विभ्रती बहुधा विवाचसं नानाधर्माणं पृथिवी यथौकसम्. (Atharv. 12/1/45) That is, the Vedic human being does not consider the rights of any one caste, language, or culture on the earth, he considers the earth to be the best of all human beings in the world.

Since ancient times, India has been world famous due to its knowledge-science and strong economic system. India-made goods are in demand abroad. Globalization is clearly manifested by our perception of **Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam**. People of India have also been going from one place to another in search of business works pilgrimage, spiritual peace etc. to exchange their art stalls ideas and knowledge this brought different human societies come closer to each other, which is a form of globalization.

---

**Silk Route-** These routes connected Asia with Europe and North Africa, as well as the world by land and sea route. The route by which silk was exported from China to western countries was known as the Silk Route. In ancient times, trade and cultural relations between different regions of the world were strengthened through the Silk Road. Land and waterways not only connected different regions of Asia but also connected Asia to Europe and North Africa. Through this silk route, clothes, spices and sugar pottery were sent from India and Southeast Asia to other parts countries of the world. This route led to both trade and cultural exchanges, and after a few centuries, Christianity, Islam and Buddhism reached different parts of the world.

**Food travel-** The feeling of globalization increases even with the exchange of food items. When traders went from their country to other countries for trade, they also took quickly prepared food items from their country. After this, the people of that country became familiar with these food items. Then gradually, these foods were propagated in all areas. For example, spaghetti and noodles. Noodles went from China to western countries and spaghetti was invented from them. Pasta is the name of an island in Italy, from there, it has gone to many parts of the world. Similarly, potatoes, groundnuts, maize, soybeans, tomatoes, chilies etc. have come from abroad and many food items have gone abroad from our country.

**Victory, Disease and Trade-** In the sixteenth century, European sailors discovered sea routes to the countries of Asia and America. The discovery of the new sea route not only helped in expand trade but also laid the foundation for Europe's conquest of other parts of the world. America had no connection with the world before it was discovered. By the mid-16th century the Portuguese and Spanish armies adopted imperialist policy. When Spain started to colonize America, smallpox germs also reached America along with the Spanish army and officers. Due to being cut off from the world from the beginning, the American people did not develop immunity to smallpox. As a result, smallpox took the form of an epidemic and spread throughout the United States. This led to the end of the American community and made the victory of the Spanish army easier.

Until the 18th century, China and India were the pillars of the global economy. These two countries dominated world trade. Some historians believe that China reduced relations with other countries in the 15th century and was cut off from the world. As a result of the declining influence of China and the increasing influence of America, western countries started becoming centers of trade in the world.

**Globalization in modern times-** At present, the beginning of land minimization Globalization is believed considered to be from the colonial period in the 16th century. This process continued amidst various types of speeds and obstacles and due to this process, the constituent countries faced a lot of trouble. In the world trade since the 1970, positive efforts have been made to make

economic integration effective. The international capital market grew unexpectedly during this period through globalization. In the 1980s, many developing countries faced economic crises and implemented the localization and infrastructure adjustment programs suggested by the International Monetary Fund to get loans from it.

**The rise of the world economy-** Economists have described three types of international economic exchange-

1. The first flow trade was mainly the trade of goods such as textiles or wheat etc.
2. Laborer is the second flow in which people move from one place to another in search of work.
3. The third flow is capital, which is invested in distant areas for a short or long period of time.

The above three types of flows affected the lives of people due to their mutual interconnection. Sometimes the relationships between these factors are broken. If we study these three flows together, we can understand the world economy of the 19th century very well. At the end of the 18th century, the population of England began to increase at a rapid pace. This led to an increase in the demand for food, housing and health services. As urbanization and industrialization started taking place, the price also started increasing along with the demand for agricultural products. As a result, the government banned the import of maize using the Corn Law. Troubled by the inflation in food items, traders, industrialists and the general public forced the government to abolish the **Corn Law** immediately. After the end of the Corn Law, food items were imported, whose price was much lower than the food produced in England. Therefore, the economic condition of the British farmers started deteriorating because they could not sell their goods at a price equal to the price of the goods imported. Agriculture in Britain stopped and farmers became unemployed and started migrating to cities or other countries.

After the reduction in the prices of food items, their consumption in England started increasing. Due to industrial development in Britain, the income of the people there also started increasing. As income increased, necessities also began to increase. To meet the needs of Britain, farming started in every region of the world including America, Russia, and Australia. Rail transport was required to transport the produce from agricultural producing areas to the ports. People from other areas were brought and settled for agriculture in new areas.

Some similar changes took place in our country. Here the British developed a canal system to do agriculture on the cultivated desert land so that wheat and cotton could be cultivated. People from other parts of Punjab were brought to the areas irrigated by canals. Whose settlements were called Canal Colony or Canal Colony? By 1890 the global agricultural economy had emerged. So there were a lot of changes in technology, capital flow, labor displacement, etc.

In the 1890s, an animal disease called rinderpest spread in Africa. Africa had a surplus of land and a small population. The means of livelihood for the people were agriculture and animal husbandry. But the disease caused more animal deaths, which had a huge impact on the African economy. In this way, the disease helped the Europeans to spread their colonization in Africa.

**Loss of contract workers from India-** Due to increasing globalization in the nineteenth century, workers were taken abroad on contract from India, which was called indentured labor. These workers were engaged in plantations, mines, railways, road construction, etc. These workers had to work there for at least five years before they could return home. Most of these laborers were from eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, central India, Tamil Nadu, etc. The agents of the owners used to take commission to send them abroad. These workers were sent to Fiji, Mauritius, Suriname, Trinidad, Guyana, etc. This contractual system is also known as the new slave system or slavery.

**Indian Trade Colonization and Global Order-** Industrialization in the nineteenth century led to an increase in cotton production in England, which reduced the export of Indian cotton.

- Excellent cotton fabrics from India were being exported to Europe for years. But after industrialization, the local producers forced the British government to ban cotton textiles coming from India.
- With this, clothes made in Britain started coming in large quantities in the Markets of India. Cotton textiles accounted for 30% of India's exports in 1800. By 1815 it fell to 15% and by 1870 it was 3%. But from 1812 to 1871 raw cotton exports increased from 5% to 35%. During this period, indigo (Indigo) saw a rapid increase in exported goods.

**Great depression** - This event, known in history as the Great Depression, was a worldwide economic recession. This recession started in 1929 and continued until 1939-40. This was the largest economic recession in the modern history of the world. This incident caused such havoc that it took many years for the countries of the world to recover from it, and its wide economic and political impact was visible. Which soon culminated in World War II. However, this war helped the world overcome the Great Depression. This period also attracted historians and filmmakers and many books were written on this subject. Many films were also made which became very popular.

The fall in the US stock market had such a psychological impact that people there reduced their expenses by up to ten percent, which affected demand. People stopped repaying bank loans, which led to the collapse of the banking infrastructure. They stopped getting loans and people started withdrawing the money deposited in banks. Due to this many banks went bankrupt and closed down. In the early 1930s, agriculture was also ruined due to drought in America. This recession in America later engulfed other countries as well and soon it turned into a great recession.



**Impact of great depression-** great depression had an impact on every section of society. Between 1929 and 1932, industrial production (45%) and building construction (80%) decreased and 5,000 banks were closed.

**Great depression and India-** India was a British colony at the time of the Great Depression which began in 1929. The whole world was engulfed by the Great Depression and India was also not untouched by it. Historians say that the Great Depression greatly slowed down the pace of India's industrial development. Although the researchers said that most of the impact on production in India was not seen, the jute industry was mostly affected. Prices had come down due to a fall in global demand for jute. When prices started falling in the global market, prices also decreased here and import-exports came down by almost half. During the great depression period, India recorded a significant decline in global trade. Between 1929 and 1932, while imports declined by 47%, exports declined by 49%. Between 1928-29 and 1933-34, sea exports declined by 55.75% to 1.25 billion, while imports declined by 55.51% to Rs 2.02 billion.

The greatest impact of the was The Great Depression of 1930 had the greatest impact in India on farmers and cultivators, railways. The farmers who produced for the global market were badly affected and their liabilities increased. Railway earnings also decreased due to a decrease in imports and exports. It was during the Great Depression that India started exporting the precious metal i.e. gold. In the beginning, Britain was helped to improve its economic condition, but the farmers of India did not get any benefit. Farmers were selling gold and silver jewelry to save their land. The Mumbai port received 1,600 ounces of gold daily, which were sent to Britain. The Great Depression of 1930 was not the most painful for Indian city dwellers.

The renowned economist Keynes believed that gold exports from India had also helped a lot in rebuilding the global economy. Even though the economies of all the countries were slowly getting back on track, the bad effects they had on the minds of the people were not going to end soon.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. When is Globalization considered to have started?  
A. In the 15th century      B. In the 16th century  
C. In the 17th century      D. In the 18th century
2. How did the Smallpox in America.  
A. By Medicine      B. By Air  
C. By Traders      C. By Spanish Soldiers and Officers.
3. When did the global recession begin?  
A. 1928      B. 1929      C. 1930      D. 1939
4. In which area was the Great depression of 1930 in India.  
A. Traders      B. Workers  
C. On wage earners      D. farmers and instalments

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Silk was exported from China to western counters. (Velvet Road/Silk Road)
2. Year in America . . . I was dry. (1925/1930)
3. Almost from great depression.....The banks were closed.  
(5 thousand/8 thousand)
4. In the world were closed by the great depression

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Globalization is also called globalization. (True/False)
2. India's global trade increased during the Great Depression. (True/False)
3. The Great Depression was a worldwide economic recession. (True/False)
4. In the 1890s, an animal disease called cattle plague spread to Africa.  
(True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                            |            |
|----------------------------|------------|
| 1. India was a colony of   | A. France  |
| 2. America was a colony    | B. Britain |
| 3. Vietnam was a colony of | C. Spain   |
| 4. Canal colony            | D. Punjab  |

### Very short question-

1. What is Corn Law?
2. Who was known as Canal Colony?
3. Explain Indian trade, colonization and global order.
4. What do you understand by recession?
5. Who ruled India at the time of great depression?
6. What was the Silk Road?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. Explain the meaning of globalization?
2. What are the effects of great depression?
3. What was the impact on India's global trade during the Great Depression?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the rise of the world economy.
2. What was the impact of the Great Depression on India?

### Project-

1. Meet people living around you who are associated with NRI families and know from them when, where, why and how these people went out of India.



## Chapter- 9

### 50 years of post-independence India

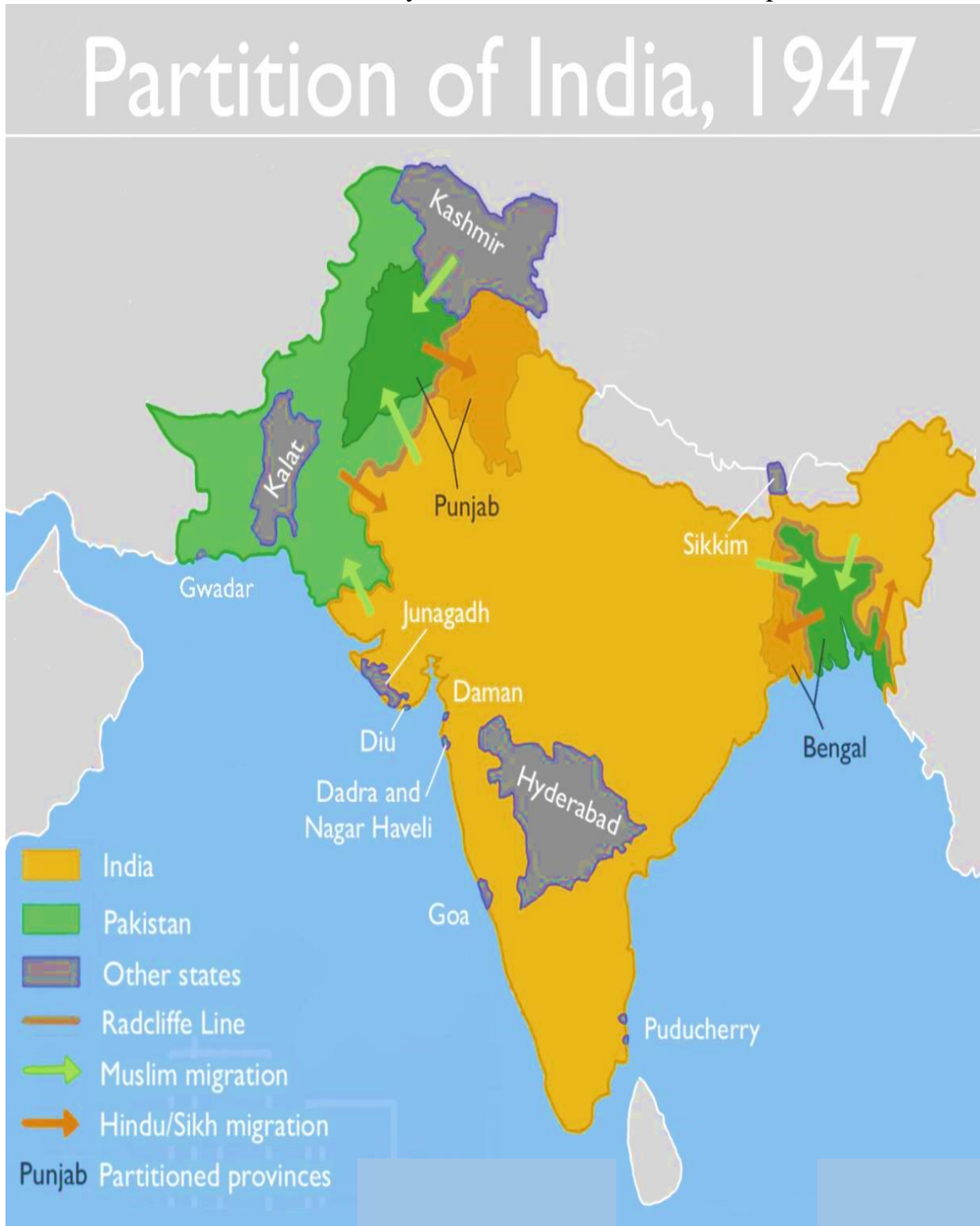
**In this chapter-** Partition of the country, integration of princely states, constitution making, first general elections in the country, reorganization of states, independence of French and Portuguese territories, non-alignment movement, green revolution, time of emergency, scientific progress of India, India's foreign policy, India's neighbor and relations with the countries of the world.

India got independence from the British on August 15, 1947 AD. Indians had to struggle for hundreds of years to this day. Ruled India was ruled by the British for 190 years. Many patriots had to sacrifice their lives to achieve independence. With the independence of India, there was also a communal division in the country. In the year 1932, the '**Communal Award**' was announced to satisfy different communities. This gave more impetus to communal politics. In the year 1947, India was divided after independence, but while social and political reasons were mainly responsible for laying its foundation, communal reasons also existed in parallel. In the end, this communalism led to the partition of India. Due to partition, incidents of communal violence are being witnessed in India as well as globally at the present time. To prevent communal violence on the basis of religion, politics, regionalism, racism, or any other basis, it is necessary that we all make collective efforts and discharge our duties with honesty and true integrity. If we succeed in doing so, surely a situation of goodwill will be permanent not only in the country but globally because communalism can only be combated by unity and harmony. Despite these challenges and other problems, independent India has achieved many achievements.

The history of the five decades after independence can be described as follows-

**Partition of the country-** Along with the independence of India, due to the partition of the country, Pakistan was formed by combining the North-Western Frontier Region, Western Punjab, Sindh, Baluchistan and East Bengal. From India, a large part of the Muslim population had to go to the newly created Pakistan. At the same time, most of the Hindus, Sikhs and others from parts of the Pakistan region were to come to India. In the history of the world, this was the largest displacement in such a short period of time. This displacement was mainly done by trains, military trains, and foot groups. Our years of peaceful association had now turned into communal hatred. Therefore, incidents of violence, arson, and rape were taking place all around. Millions of refugees were coming from both countries. Therefore, people coming to India were first accommodated in temporary camps and then gradually arrangements were made for their permanent rehabilitation.

**Integration of Princely States-** The authority of the British government over the Indian princely states ended on August 15, 1947 AD. About 565 princely states could now join India or Pakistan or remain independent. During this time, the first Home Minister of the Government of India was 'Iron Man' Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel. He acted wisely in such situations. Patel had persuaded most



Map- 9.1 Partition of India

of the princely states to join the Indian Union. Only the princely states of Hyderabad, Junagadh and Kashmir were yet to join India. Sardar Patel included Hyderabad and Junagadh in the Indian Union on the basis of public opinion there. Maharaja Hari Singh, the ruler of Jammu and Kashmir, wanted to keep his princely state independent. But on October 22, 1947, the Pakistani army and tribes together invaded Jammu and Kashmir. Maharaja Hari Singh, plagued by the invasion of Pakistan, signed the letter of accession to the Indian Union. Now the Indian Army took the lead and forced the invaders to retreat from the Kashmir Valley. To solve the Kashmir problem, the Prime Minister of India Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru, at the request of Lord Mountbatten, took the problem of Kashmir to the United Nations in 1948. The United Nations set up a commission and conducted a ceasefire between the two countries. As a result, even today, one-third of Jammu and Kashmir is with Pakistan, which we call Pakistan Occupied Kashmir (PoK). Under the then circumstances, Article 370 was temporarily added to the Indian Constitution for Kashmir. Under this, Special Status was given to Jammu and Kashmir.

### Do you know?

- The special status granted to Jammu and Kashmir under Article 370 by the Indian Parliament has been abolished on October 31, 2019.

**Constitution making-** A 'Constituent Assembly' was formed to make the Constitution of India. The Constituent Assembly had a total of 389 members. Its first meeting was held on December 9, 1946. Dr. Rajendra Prasad later took over as the permanent president of this Constituent Assembly. A total of 22 committees were formed by the Constituent Assembly to prepare the Constitution. A seven-member drafting committee was formed under the chairmanship of Dr. Bhīma Rao Ambedkar. This committee was given the task of drafting the constitution. Legal experts and intellectuals discussed the constitutions of many countries for the formulation of the constitution. Finally, on November 26, 1949, our constitution was ready. It took 2 years, 11 months and 18 days to make this constitution. It was implemented on January 26, 1950. Every year this day is celebrated as '**Republic Day**' in India. The basic basis for framing our Constitution was the public opinion of the people. For this reason, the Preamble of the Constitution declares India to be a sovereign, socialist, secular and democratic republic. The Constitution of India is the longest written constitution of any democratic country in the world.

### Constitution-

- The document of rules and laws to run the governance of any country is called constitution.

**The first general elections in India-** Were held in 1951-52 AD. About 17 crore and 30 lakh voters participated in this election. There were a total of 489 Lok Sabha seats in this election and 14 national and regional local parties participated in the elections. This was probably the first election in the world in which such a large number of people participated. The Congress, headed by

Jawaharlal Nehru, won a landslide victory in this election. Jawaharlal Nehru became the country's first democratically elected prime Minister.

**Reorganization of states-** Reorganization is a process in which a system is

### Do you know?

- Our constitution is the world's largest (251-page) handwritten constitution, written by Prem Bihari Narayan Raizada. The name of Prem Bihari Narayan Raizada is written on every page of the constitution, and the name of Prem Bihari Narayan Raizada and his grandfather are mentioned on the last page. Because on this condition, he had taken on the responsibility of writing the constitution and in return, he did not even take ₹ 1 as remuneration.

reorganized or restructured or rebuilt. There was a need for reorganization of states on the basis of language and geography in the country. In 1953, the task of the States Reorganization Commission was to reorganize the states on linguistic basis. Based on the report of the Commission, the States Reorganization Act was passed in November 1956. Through this, 14 states and 6 union territories were arranged on the

basis of language in India. Hindi recognized as the language used in offices in India. Along with this, English continued to be used on a large scale in government offices. The reorganization of states has not only weakened the unity of India but has strengthened it as a whole, but it has not been able to solve all the disputes and problems between different states. Questions like border disputes between different states, the problem of linguistic minorities and the problem of sharing river water still remain unresolved.

**Independence of French and Portuguese regions-** Even after the independence of India, France and Portugal continued to have control over some areas. Places like Pondicherry, Mahi, Calicut, Yanam, Chandra Nagar was under the control of the French. The French government returned all these areas to India in 1954 AD. While places like Goa, Daman and Diu, Dadra and Nagar Haveli were occupied by the Portuguese. The Portuguese did not want to return these areas. But finally the Indian Army drove the Portuguese out of India in 1961 AD. Which was named Operation Vijay. As a result, the Portuguese governor of Goa surrendered unconditionally. In this way, Goa was also merged with India at the end of 1961.

**Non-Aligned Movement-** After the Second World War, many countries in the world split into two opposing groups on the basis of ideology. One of these factions was a faction of the United States and the other of the Soviet Union. The US-led bloc was called the 'Western Bloc' and the Soviet-led bloc was called the 'Eastern Bloc'. In order to achieve economic-technical cooperation, India tried to have equal friendship with both the factions. India has also adopted a policy of non-alignment due to the desire to conduct independent foreign policy. Our foreign policy has been based on 'not joining any faction and saying right is right and wrong is wrong'. For India, the non-alignment movement has been a symbol

of global peace and social, economic and political development of developing countries.

**Green Revolution-** With the partition of the country, a lot of fertile land went to Pakistan. In the 1960s, the Indo-China war, the Indo-Pakistan war and drought weakened our economy. This led to a food crisis in India. As a result, a new agricultural policy was announced for farmers. **M.S. Swami Nathan** is called the father of green revolution in India. The Green Revolution was a period that began in the 1960s, during which agriculture in India was transformed into a modern industrial system using high-yielding varieties of seeds, mechanized agricultural equipment, irrigation facilities, pesticides and fertilizers. Through this agricultural policy, arrangements were made to provide electricity, irrigation and cheap loans to the farmers. As a result, by the early 1970s, the cultivation of wheat, rice and maize in the country had increased by two and a half times. The rapid increase in agricultural production during this period is called the '**Green Revolution**'.

Green Revolution	:	It is related to agricultural production.
Yellow Revolution	:	It is related to oilseed production.
Blue Revolution	:	It is related to fisheries.
White Revolution	:	It is related to milk production.

**Time of Emergency-** Due to the internal and external crises of the country (Emergency), all the powers of the central and state governments fall into the hands of the President. Emergency was declared in India over a period of 21 months from June 25, 1975 AD to March 21, 1977 AD. The then President Fakhruddin Ali Ahmed declared emergency under Article 352 of the Indian Constitution at the behest of the then Indian Prime Minister Indira Gandhi. This was the most controversial and undemocratic period in the history of independent India. After independence, India experienced the biggest political crisis in 1975 AD. Indira Gandhi's government, elected in 1971, took power with the slogan 'Garibi Hatao'. Within a year of the formation of the government, the Indo-Pak war and Bangladesh were created in December 1971 AD and other problems such as recession, unemployment, poverty, food shortage, and problem of Bangladeshi refugees, drought and failure of monsoon led to increasing public dissatisfaction. Due to nationwide strikes and student movements, the law-and-order situation in the country was continuously deteriorating. For this reason, by 1974 AD, a large part of the public was angry with Indira Gandhi's government. On June 12, 1975 AD, the Allahabad High Court convicted Indira Gandhi of improper conduct in elections. Due to which they could not remain in any post. During this time Jayaprakash Narayan, popularly known as Lok Nayak, was carrying out satyagraha and non-violent movement against Indira Gandhi's government. He pressed for his resignation from the post on the basis of the political crisis in the country and the decision given by the court. Indira Gandhi declared emergency on June 25, 1975 AD to save her power. The press was banned immediately after the emergency was imposed. Jayaprakash Narayan and other opposition leaders

like Morarji Desai, Atal Bihari Vajpayee, LK Advani, Charan Singh, Chandrashekhar and innumerable student leaders involved in the movement against the government were arrested. Rastriya Swayamsevak Sangh as also banned and more than one lakh people were assisted along with it main works by imposing a ban on the. During this time-

- The Parliament was rendered ineffective by several constitutional amendments.
- Most of the states where opposition parties had governments were dismissed.
- The Program was strictly implemented for family planning.

In the above situation, the public continued to protest strongly during the emergency, as a result of which the then government was forced to end the Emergency on March 21, 1977. General elections were held in the country this year in which the first coalition government of non-Congress parties was formed.

**India's Scientific Progress-** Scientists have played an important role in bringing our country on the path of development. India established the Ministry of Scientific Research and Natural Resources in 1951 AD. Due to research work done under institutions like ISRO, BARC and IIT, India furthered scientific advancement. With the great effort of scientists like Homi Jehangir Bhabha, Vikram Sarabhai, Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam, Kasturirangan etc., India could build missiles like Prithvi, Nag, Agni, Akash, BrahMos etc.

India made itself a nuclear power nation by conducting nuclear tests in Pokhran (Rajasthan) in 1974 and 1998 AD. Our scientists have played an important role in making India a major military power in the world. India's famous scientist Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam is known as the '**Missile Man**' in the world. India made a name in space technology by sending satellites like Aryabhata, Bhaskar, Rohini etc. Today, India is also capable of sending satellites of other countries into space.



**Fig. 9.1 Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam**

**India's Foreign Policy-** Our world today is called the **Family of nations**. There are about 198 sovereign states on seven continents. India is a sovereign nation, which means it is supreme in both internal and external affairs. We, as an independent country, have to maintain good relations with all foreign states. In particular, we should have good international relations with neighboring countries in Asia. But, at the same time, the country has to be carefully protected, keeping in mind various levels such as border security, foreign trade, economic benefits, the reputation of the country, etc. The main pillars of Indian foreign policy have been panchsheel, non-alignment, independent foreign policy operations, solidarity with developing countries, goals of achieving national and



---

global interests, etc. India has good relations with other countries like Bhutan, Afghanistan, Nepal, the Maldives, Indonesia, Sri Lanka, and Bangladesh, except China and Pakistan. Let us take a look at India's relations with some of the countries in our nation's family.

### **India's neighbor and relations with the countries of the world-**

**Relations with Pakistan-** Pakistan was created in 1947 due to the partition of India. There are opportunities for historical similarities, cultural homogeneity, geographical proximity, and economic homogeneity between India and Pakistan. But even today, India-Pakistan relations have not been able to get out of the realm of competition, tension, conflict, and war. We have geographical proximity and a shared cultural heritage. We have shared a history of many centuries. India desires a good friendship with Pakistan. But due to military dictatorship and political instability, Pakistan has not maintained good relations with India. Indo-Pak wars took place in 1947-48, 1965, and 1971 and again in 1999 (Kargil War). India emerged victorious in all these wars. The Kashmir problem and terrorism are major issues that have to be effectively resolved to build good relations. About one-third of Kashmir is yet to become independent from Pakistan. A long-term peace solution between India and Pakistan is yet to be worked out.

**Relations with China-** China is a big neighbor of India, which is willing to play an important role in world politics. India was the first non-communist country to recognize Communist China on January 1, 1950. Prime Minister Nehru made several attempts to get communist China a permanent place in the Security Council. On October 20, 1962, China launched a fierce attack on India. India suffered heavy losses of life and property in this war. Since then, India-China relations have been based on tension and mistrust.

**Relations with Nepal and Bhutan-** India and Nepal have had deep social, religious and cultural relations for a long time. The open border between the two has been a symbol of trust. Similarly, India has had close relations with Bhutan, another country located in the Himalayas. The Treaty of 1949 established a lasting friendship between the two countries. In these two countries, India's emotional connection is also related to Hinduism and Buddhism. The geographical location of Bhutan and Nepal is also important from the point of view of Indian security.

Sri Lanka is the immediate neighboring country of India located in the Indian

**Relations with Sri Lanka-** Ocean. There have been historical, political, social and religious contacts between India and Sri Lanka. After independence, there were differences between the two countries regarding the Tamils based in Sri Lanka. Tensions had definitely increased after India sent a place-keeping force. Relations between the two countries are good, even after some differences.

**Relations with Bangladesh-** Bangladesh was called East Pakistan from 1947 AD to 1971 AD. On December 6, 1971, India was the first country to recognize Bangladesh. Due to language and cultural ties, there was an atmosphere of close

friendship and mutual cooperation between the two countries from the very beginning. However, due to the rule of military rulers and increasing religious fanaticism, there has been a situation of tension in relations. India has always supported Bangladesh in the fields of technology, science, and industry.

**Relations with Myanmar-** Relations with Myanmar- Myanmar is also called the gateway to Southeast Asia due to its geographical location. India and Myanmar share a 1643 km border. Most of the people of Myanmar are followers of Buddhism and in this sense, India-Myanmar has cultural proximity. Being a neighboring country, Myanmar also has economic, political, cultural and strategic importance for India. Barring a few exceptions, India-Myanmar relations have been friendly.

**India and the United States of America (U.S.A.)-** India is a democratic system and the United States of America (U.S.A.) is a big nation. Our friendly relations are also important in today's world politics. Since 1947, our relations have undergone rapid changes based on national interests. The United States has helped us financially with our economic development through the Five-Year Plans. America's support strengthened India during the Chinese invasion in 1962, but later American policymakers helped Pakistan in the Indo-Pak wars, and we have a common concern to stopping terrorism. India and the United States have good relations in the fields of foreign trade, science and technology, space, and education. The two nations are bound by the principles of world peace and the support of the United Nations. India is keeping a close watch on the foreign policy trends of its Democratic and Republican Party presidents. Formulates its policy towards.

**India and Russia-** During the Cold War, India and the Soviet Union had strong strategic, military, economic, and political relations. After the collapse of the Soviet Union, Russia inherited its close ties with India, resulting in the two countries sharing a special strategic relationship. But a communist country, the Soviet Union, condemned China's aggression in 1962. Soviet Russia supported India during the liberation of Goa in 1961. In 1966, the Tashkent Agreement was signed by India and Pakistan with the mediation of Russia. India and the Soviet Union signed a 20-year cooperation treaty with Russia. Russia extends a lot of support to India for the development of industry and commerce. Russia is supporting India's claim for a permanent seat in the UNO's Security Council.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. How many members in the Constituent Assembly -  
A. 382  
B. 380  
C. 381  
D. 389
2. Yellow Revolution is related to.  
A. Oilseeds  
B. Fisheries  
C. Milk  
D. All of the above

3. When did the Kargil War between India and Pakistan it happened in.  
A. In 1969      B. In 1989      C in 1999      D. in 1979
4. When did India send peace keeping force to Sri Lanka?  
A. Traders      B. Workers  
C. On Wage Earners      D. Farmers and Instalments

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Father of Green Revolution in India it is called. (M.S. Swami Nathan/Nehru)
2. Number of neighboring countries of India . . . yes. ( 9/7)
3. Indo-China War it happened. (1969/1962)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Scientist Kasturirangan ji, popularly known as 'Missile Man', is known. (True/False)
2. A 21-month emergency was declared in India. (True/False)
3. Emergency was imposed in India on 25 Jun 1975 (True/False)
4. The emergency period ended in India on 21 march 1977 (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Emergency in India          | A. 1962 |
| 2. War between India and China | B. 1998 |
| 3. Nuclear Test                | C. 1975 |

### Very short answer question-

1. When did India become independent?
2. When was the States Reorganization Commission established?
3. Who was the "Iron Man" of India?
4. How long did it take to create the Indian Constitution?
5. When was the United Nations established?
6. When did India adopt the policy of economic liberalization?
7. When was the Planning Commission established?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What is the function of the Constituent Assembly?
2. Name the neighboring countries of India?
3. What are the causes of tension between India and Pakistan?
4. What was the Non-Aligned Movement?
5. What do you mean by 'Green Revolution'?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. On what basis and how was the reorganization of states in India done?
2. Why did Indira Gandhi impose Emergency in 1975?
3. What has been India's contribution to the United Nations?
4. Shed light on India's economic planning?
5. What are the democratic relations between India and USA? Explain.
6. Explain India's relations with Russia.

### Project-

1. Make a map of India and find out the neighboring countries.

---

# VEDDBHUSHAN 5th YEAR POLITICAL SCIENCE



## Chapter 10

### Democracy

**In this chapter-** Meaning of democracy, definitions, types of democracy, democracy and people, political parties and pressure groups in India's democracy, difference between political parties and pressure groups, characteristics of democracy, major challenges before democracy, antiquity of democracy.

**Meaning of democracy-** Loktantra is the Hindi translation of the English word democracy. Democracy is made up of the two Greek words demos and kratia. Where **demos** mean people and **crecia** means power or rule, That is, democracy means the rule of the people. Democracy is the system of governance in which the people govern themselves or through their elected representatives. Democracy has been considered well in all forms of governance because in some way everyone participates in it.

**Definitions-** Scholars have given many definitions of democracy, some of which are as follows:

1. According to Diesis, democracy is a system of governance in which the majority of the nation is the ruler.
2. Defining democracy, Abraham Lincoln said, "Democracy is a government of the people, for the people, and by the people." If it is explained further, it would mean a government of the people i.e. government on behalf of the people, a government for the people i.e. a government working for the public interest i.e. a government by the people i.e. representative government (representative representatives elected by the people).
3. According to Lord Bryce, Democracy is a form of governance in which the power of the state is legally vested not in any particular class or class but in the members of the entire society.
4. According to Radhakrishnan, in the true sense, the self-government of a democratic society is to be the least governed, to be governed in the best way.

From the above definitions, it can be understood that the main participation in democratic governance is that of the people. The best definition of democracy is considered by former Us President Abraham Lincoln.

**Types of Democracy-** On the basis of the system of governance, there are two types of democracy-

**Direct Democracy-**

This system of governance in democracy is governed directly by the people themselves. It takes policy decisions, makes laws and appoints administrative officers. Direct democracy is possible only in small and sparsely populated States. According to mythology, from power and made Prithu the king. By It is clear from this example that in ancient times there was direct democracy. At present,

there is a system of direct democracy in gram sabhas under the Panchyat raj system in India and in some states (provinces) of Switzerland.

**Indirect or representative democracy-** Indirect democracy is the system of governance in which the people elect their representatives for a certain period of time, who constitute the legislature and make laws. At present, almost all democratic states have an indirect or representative democracy.

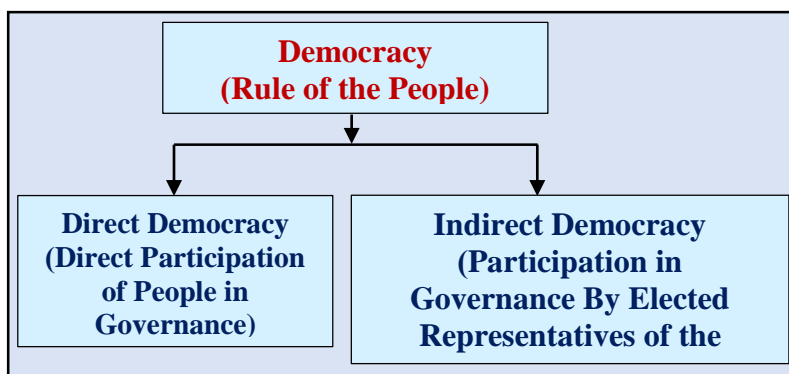


Fig- 10.1 Block diagram of democracy

### In Democracy and people-

Ideal government is possible only when citizens are aware of their rights and duties. When people have proper knowledge of their country or region will be able to make the right decision. Therefore, the public should get information through newspapers, radio, television, public meetings and other means. In a democracy, every citizen should be aware and literate so that he can exercise his vote properly. The public has the right to discuss and criticize the activities of the government. They also have the right to oppose the anti-people policies of the government. There is indirect democracy in India because here the people elect their representatives and send them to democracy.

In an indirect democracy, all political parties' field their own candidates (male or female) in the election. Political parties play an important role in democracy. They act as a link between the people and the government. They also build public opinion. The government is formed by the representatives elected by the people. According to the Indian Constitution, every citizen who has completed the age of 18 has the right to vote without discrimination of gender, class, caste, and creed. This is what we call universal adult suffrage. The political party that gets the majority forms the government. The party that is in a minority acts as the opposition party. In our country, some citizens do not exercise their right to vote. The main reason for this is a lack of awareness and education. Some citizens think, 'What will I gain from this?' They do not realize that voting in elections is not only their right but also their duty.

When more than two parties contest elections in a country and they form a government in alliance with a single party or other parties, it is called a multi-party system of governance. In a multi-party system, many political parties participate in power as a party or opposition by compromising to come to power when they contest elections; this is called an alliance or front. There are mainly three alliances in India: the National Democratic Alliance (BJP and allies), the United Progressive Alliance (Congress and allies), and the Left Front (Communist Parties, CPI, etc.).

**Political parties and pressure groups In India's Democracy-** political parties have the main goal of gaining power. Political parties form a strong and stable government by winning their respective candidates in elections. Which is responsible for the entire state or nation. And pressure groups are non-profit and voluntary organizations that work at the local, regional, national, or international level based on cause and notice. They try to influence the policies of the government and industrial manufacturers for the achievement of their objectives. Pressure groups are an important part of the democratic process and are found in all types of governance.

**Pressure groups in India-** There are many types of pressure groups in India, the main ones of which are as follows:

**Trade Groups-** Trade groups are one of the most influential and organized pressure groups in India. These include the Confederation of Indian Industry (CII), the Federation of Indian Chambers of Commerce and Industry (FICCI), the Chamber of Commerce and Industry (ASSOCHAM), etc.

**Trade Unions-** Trade unions pay attention to the demands of workers. They are also called labor groups. All India Trade Unions (AITUC), the Centre of Indian Trade Unions (CITU), HMS, etc. are prominent.

**Agricultural Groups-** These groups represent the farming community of India and work for their well-being. Such as Bhartiya Kisan Sangh, Hind Kisan Panchayat, etc. Apart from this, there are pressure groups in India such as the Medical Association of India, Akhil Bhartiya Vidyarthi Parishad (ABVP), the National Students Union of India (NSUI), the Marwari Association, Harijan Sevak Sangh, Gandhian environmentalists, etc.

**Differences between political parties and pressure groups-** Political parties and pressure groups have the following differences-

Table 10.1		
	Political Party	Pressure Groups
1.	Political parties are formal registered organizations.	Pressure groups can be both formal and informal organizations.
2.	Political parties try to implement their principles by gaining power through elections.	Pressure groups do not contest elections directly.
3.	A person can be a member of the same political party.	A person can be a member of many pressure groups.
4.	Ideology is more important in political parties.	Ideology is relatively less important in a pressure group.
5.	Political parties are characteristic of democratic governance system.	Pressure groups are found in all governance systems.

**Characteristics of Democracy-** The characteristics of democracy are as follows-

1. In a democratic country, every adult citizen has the right to cast one vote and every vote has equal importance. Any citizen of any caste, religion, social, economic and educational background can contest for any post which means that all citizens have the right to vote.
2. A democratic government governs within the framework of constitutional laws and civil rights.
3. In democratic countries, the rulers are selected by the people who make all the important decisions.
4. There are free and fair elections. Elections provide an alternative and a good opportunity for the people to change the present rulers.
5. Opposition parties are allowed to work independently before and after the elections.
6. It has freedom of expression and people exercise fundamental rights.
7. Such governments are based on the fundamental principle of political equality.
8. Democracy is an independent impartial judiciary to maintain all systems.

**Major challenges before democracy-** Democracy has been considered to be the best among all the governance systems in the world, yet democracy has to face many challenges. Usually, those problems are called challenges. We have done a lot of development work in India in the social, economic, and political spheres since independence, but still, we have not been able to accelerate the pace of development because there are many challenges in the path of development. Due to problems like communalism, casteism, regionalism, terrorism, poverty, and unemployment, we are not able to spend the amount spent on development work completely on departmental work. These problems are disturbing the social peace system due to increasing mutual distrust and differences. Terrorism against democracy and humanity has become a worldwide problem today.

### **Ways to overcome the problems of democracy-**

1. Continuous schemes and programmed are being released by the central and state governments to increase the literacy rate to 100%. The Government of India released the new National Education Policy 2020 on July 29, 2020.
2. For the success of local self-government democracy, there are provisions for the establishment of Panchayati Raj and strengthening local self-government in the Indian Constitution.
3. Efforts have also been made to raise political awareness among the citizens. They are being politically alerted by various means of communication.
4. New employment opportunities are being given to the unemployed.
5. The following measures can be adopted by the government to solve the problems prevailing in democracy:.

**The antiquity of democracy-** What should of our democracy like be, is The following Vedic mantra Pushpanjali (Rigveda Appendix). ॐ स्वस्ति, साम्राज्यं भौज्यं स्वाराज्यं वैराज्यं पारमेष्ठ्यं राज्यं महाराज्यमाधिपत्यमयं समन्तपर्यायीस्यात् सार्वभौमः सार्वयुषः आन्तादापरार्धात्. पृथीव्यै



समुद्रपर्यं ताया एकराळिति ।। Meaning of mantra- Our state should be an all-welfare state. Let our state be full of all consumables. There is a people's kingdom here. Let our state be free from attachment, without greed. We should have the authority over such a supreme maharaja. May our state be safe to the limits of the horizon? May our longevity be a continuous state on the earth extending up to the sea? May our kingdom be safe till the end of creation?

From the Indian point of view, democracy or republic is not a new concept. Concepts such as republic, universal governance and recall of elected representatives have been mentioned in Vedic literature, which give strength to the current democratic concept. A strong democratic system existed in India since ancient times. There is evidence of this in the description our Vedic literature, coins, records, descriptions of foreign travelers and scholars. Vedic literature also had an electoral system for rulers and other functionaries of the government, like the present. Vedic literature and Chanakya's economics provide evidence of the choice system. Councils were created in ancient times which were a similar model of the present parliamentary system. Governance was governed by these councils and all sections were represented in them, so the number of members was high. For example, the Central Council of the Republic of Lichchawi, the then most famous republic, had 7707 members. As in the present, the meetings of the councils were held regularly. They were discussed before they were decided. Decisions followed a majority process, called bhuyisikkim (भूयिसिक्किम). In some decisions, consensus was necessary and sometimes decisions were made through the voting process. At that time, votes were called verses. There was an officer named Shalakagrahak (शलकग्राहक) to conduct the election process. There are three types of voting described in Vedic literature.

1. **Secret ballot** – In this, votes were cast by letter like the present. It did not identify the voter.
2. **Direct voting** – In this process, the person used to openly declare his vote.
3. **Sankarnajalpak-** In this process, the voter secretly stated his vote in the ear of the collector.

The members were free to adopt any one of these three procedures. The collector used to keep an account of these views with due diligence and honesty. In addition, various ministries were formed to govern orderly governance, and talented and qualified people were selected for these ministries. In the Yajurveda and Brahmin texts, they are called ratnai(रत्नि). Apart from these, the formation of ministries is mentioned in the Manu smriti, Shukra niti, Mahabharata, etc. According to the Mahabharata, there were six members in the cabinet. According to Manu Smriti, the number of members was 7-8. The above facts show that, since ancient times, our country has had a glorious democratic tradition.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. What is the meaning of demos is it happens-  
A. Governance                      B. Raja                      C. Democracy                      D. People
2. Which country in the world currently has direct democracy-  
A. India                                      B. Switzerland In  
C. England in                              D. America
3. Which of the following is considered to be the best definition of democracy-  
A. Lord Bryce                              B. Radhakrishnan  
C. Diasi                                      D. None of these
4. To be aware of one which of the following is used by to become aware of democracy-  
A. Newspaper                              B. Radio  
C. Television                              D. All of the above
5. What is the age prescribed for in the Indian Constitution?  
A. 18 Years                              B. 17 Years  
C. 19 Years                              D. 16 Years

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Participation is there in direct democratic governance.  
(People/Elected Representatives)
2. Akhil Bhartiya Vidyarthi Parishad is a pressure group in India.  
(Political parties/pressure groups)
3. Business Group '.....' The pressure group. (Indian Industry Association/Harijan Sevak Sangh)
4. In ancient times in India the vote was called (chhanda/met)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Voting on the basis of caste and religion weakens democracy. (True/False)
2. In a democracy, the people are supreme. (True/False)
3. The entire state and the nation is responsible for the pressure group.  
(True/False)

### Very short answer question-

1. What is democracy?
2. What is the best definition of democracy? Write the definition.
3. What is indirect called democracy?
4. What was the election officer called in ancient India?
5. Why should every citizen be literate in a democracy?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What are the necessary conditions for the success of democracy?
2. How does democracy reduce economic inequality?
3. Write down measures to deal with the challenges of democracy.

---

4. What do you mean by political party? Explain.

**Long Answer Questions-**

1. What is the meaning of democracy?
2. Describe the characteristics of democracy.
3. How political parties and pressure groups work in a democracy.
4. Does democracy face different challenges? Describe.
5. How can the problems of democracy be overcome?

**Project-**

1. Compile mantras from Vedic literature indicating democracy or republic.



## Lesson – 11

### Indian Constitution

#### (Federalism, Fundamental Rights, Directive Principles and Fundamental Duties)

**In this chapter** - Other systems of government described in Vedic literature, Meaning of federalism, Federalism in India, Fair and independent judiciary, Bicameral Legislature, Parliamentary system of governance, Fundamental rights, Policy directive principles, Difference between fundamental rights and policy directive principles, Basic duty.

At the time of making constitution the framers of the Indian Constitution added the federalism, fundamental rights, directive principles, etc. in the Constitution to ensure maximum participation and rights of the states and citizens in power and to create a public welfare state at the time of constitution making. Under this chapter, we will study these points under this chapter.

**Other systems of governance mentioned in Vedic literature-** Under Vedic literature, Aitrey Brahmana describes various systems of governance, many of whose provisions have been used as articles of the Constitution under the federal system of governance system of our India. साम्राज्याय, भौज्याय, स्वराज्याय वैराज्याय, पारमेष्ठ्याय, राज्याय महाराज्याय, आधिपत्याय, स्वावश्याय, आतिष्ठाय ..... अभिषिञ्चति । ऐतरेय ब्राह्मण( 8.4.18) In the eighth fifth chapter of the Aitrey Brahmin, a comprehensive description of various systems of governance is found. प्राच्यां दिशि ये के च प्राच्यानां राजानाः साम्राज्यायैव तेऽभिषिच्यन्ते इत्यादि ऐतरेय ब्राह्मण (8/3/14) Also, the names of their rulers are also given. It is also mentioned where the systems of governance were prevalent. These systems are as follows:

1. **Empire (साम्राज्य)** - The ruler of this system was called 'Emperor'. It was prevalent in the eastern states (Magadha, Kalinga, Banga etc.). The emperor was a monopoly ruler.
2. **Bhaujya (भौज्य)** - The ruler of this system was called 'Bhoja'. This system was prevalent in the Sattva (Yadav) states of the south direction. Andhak and Vrishni Yadav-Republic fall under this category. In this system of governance, the feeling of public interest and public welfare was high, so this method became more popular.
3. **Swarajya (स्वराज्य)** - The ruler of this system was called 'Swarat'. This system was prevalent in the states of the west direction (Saurashtra, Kutch, Sauvira etc.). It is a self-ruling system. The king rules freely.
4. **Vairajya (वैराज्य)** - The ruler of this system was called 'Virat'. This system was prevalent in the northern part of the Himalayas, North Kuru, and Uttar Madra etc. This system of governance is democratic or union system of governance. In this, the responsibility of the administration is not on the individual but on the group.

5. **Parmeshta** (पारमेष्ठ्य) - The ruler of this system was called 'Parameshthi'. It has been described in detail in Mahabharata Shantiparva and Sabhaparva. This is a republic system. Its main feature is the establishment of peace and order among the people. In this, everyone has equal rights. Gana is based on the merits and qualities of the chief.
6. **State** (राज्य) - In this system, the highest ruler of the state was 'Raja'. This system was prevalent in the states of Kuru, Panchal, Ushinar etc. There was a council of ministers to assist the king. Various officials were appointed to run the administration.
7. **Maharajya** (महाराज्य) - The administrator of this system was called 'Maharaj'. This is the highest form of the state system. He was given the title of 'Maharaj' on achieving victory over a strongman.
8. **Supremacy** (आधिपत्य) - In this system, the administrator was called 'Adhipati'. This has been called 'synonymous'. He used to subdue the neighboring districts and collect taxes from them. स हि ज्येष्ठः श्रेष्ठो राजाऽधिपतिः. (छान्दोग्य उपनिषद् 5.2.6) has described this system as the best.
9. **Sovereign** (सार्वभौम) - Sovereignly, the administrator of this system was called एकराट् । सार्वभौमा..... एकराट् । It is mentioned in the Aitreya Brahmana (8.15). He was the king of the whole land. This system has been named 'Universal Dominance'.

**Meaning of Federalism-** Federalism means **federalism**, which is a Hindi version of English federalism. The word federalism is derived from the Latin word **Foedus**, which means a type of agreement or agreement. Thus, federalism means a system of governance in which power is divided (by contract) between the central (union) and the units of the union. Generally, there are two levels of governments in the federal system: a central government, which makes laws on subjects of national importance and governs the governance of the country. There are other state or provincial governments whose work is the subject of daily work, including police and administration. Governments of both levels of power do their work independently at their own level. On this basis, it can be said that federalism is the form of government in which there are at least two levels of government within the country - the first at the central level and the second at the local or state level.

The best example of the first process is the US while India of the second process. At present, countries like America, Australia, Canada, Russia and India are considered successful federal countries.

**Unitary Governance-** In a unitary system, there is only one level of governance and the remaining units work under it. In this, the central government can give orders to provincial or local governments. But in a federal system, the central government cannot order the state government to do anything special. The State Governments have their own powers and for this they are not accountable

to the Central Government. Both these governments are accountable to the people at their own level.

**Federalism in India-** In the Indian Constitution, the word union has been used in the English language. In the context of India, federalism is defined as the distribution of rights between central, state and local governments, which is called decentralization of power. The Government at every level derives its powers from the Constitution. Federalism in the Indian Constitution is derived from Canada. In the Indian Union system, there are two types of governance in terms of the division or centralization of powers on the basis of region by the Constitution – unitary governance and federal government. India is very large and diverse in terms of population and region, so it was natural to adopt a federal system of governance in India. Article 1 of the Constitution states that India shall be a Union of States. But despite adopting the federal rule of the Constitution, there is a keen desire to remove the weaknesses of the Indian Federal System. That is why some of the characteristics of unitary governance have been adopted in the federal rule of India. At present, there will be 28 states and 8 union territories in India by 2022. The main characteristics of the Indian federal system are as follows:

1. **Dual System of Governance** - In India, both the Union and the State have separate governments. The federal executive consists of the Council of Ministers and the Legislature of the People's Representatives (Parliament) headed by the President and the Prime Minister. Similarly, states also have an executive and a legislature. Where there is a council of ministers and an assembly of people's representatives under the leadership of the Governor and the Chief Minister. This system is called a dual governance system. The Governor is an important organ of the Indian federal system in every State.
2. **Clear separation of Powers-** In India, there is a clear separation of powers between the Union and the States. Accordingly, the union and state governments make laws and administer the issues assigned to them. Article 246 of the Seventh Schedule of the Constitution provides for division of powers between the Center and the States through the Union List, The State List and the Concurrent List which are as follows:
  - **Union List-** It is also called a central list. There are issues of national importance in the Union List, for which only the Central Government has the right to make laws. At the time of the promulgation of the Constitution, there were 97 subjects on this list, but at present it includes 100 subjects. Such as railways, finance, defense, foreign affairs, banking, communication, postal, atomic energy, citizenship, census, currency etc.
  - **State List-** The State List contains subjects of local importance on which the state governments have been empowered to make laws. There were 66 subjects in the State List at the time of the constitution's implementation, but at present it has 61 subjects. Such as police, local government, prisons, agriculture, irrigation, veterinary medicine, health etc.

- **Concurrent List-** The power to make laws on the subjects of the Concurrent List has been given to both the Central Government and the State Governments, i.e., both the Central and State Governments can make laws on the subjects of this List. But in the event of differences between the two governments, the law of the central government will be valid. At the time of a promulgation of the Constitution, there were 47 subjects on the Concurrent List, but at present it has 52 subjects. Such as administration of justice, education, electricity, industry, forest and environment, labor unions, marriage law etc.

In addition to the above three lists, the remaining subjects have been included in the residual list. The Central Government has been given the right to make laws on these subjects.

3. **Supremacy of the written form of the Constitution-** In the Indian federal system of governance, the Constitution must be written. The Constitution is the basic and supreme law of the country. In this system, the federal and provincial governments follow the provisions of the Constitution. The process of amending the Constitution has been made rigorous to maintain the supremacy of the Constitution.

#### 4. Impartial and Independent Judiciary-

In Indian federal governance, independence and supremacy of the judiciary are essential. Therefore, the Supreme Court of India is the protector of the Constitution. Laws and decisions taken against the Constitution can be declared illegal by the Supreme Court. Necessary provisions have been made in the Constitution to maintain the independence of the Supreme Court. Articles 124-147 and 214-237 of the Indian Constitution provide for the judiciary for the Union and the States.

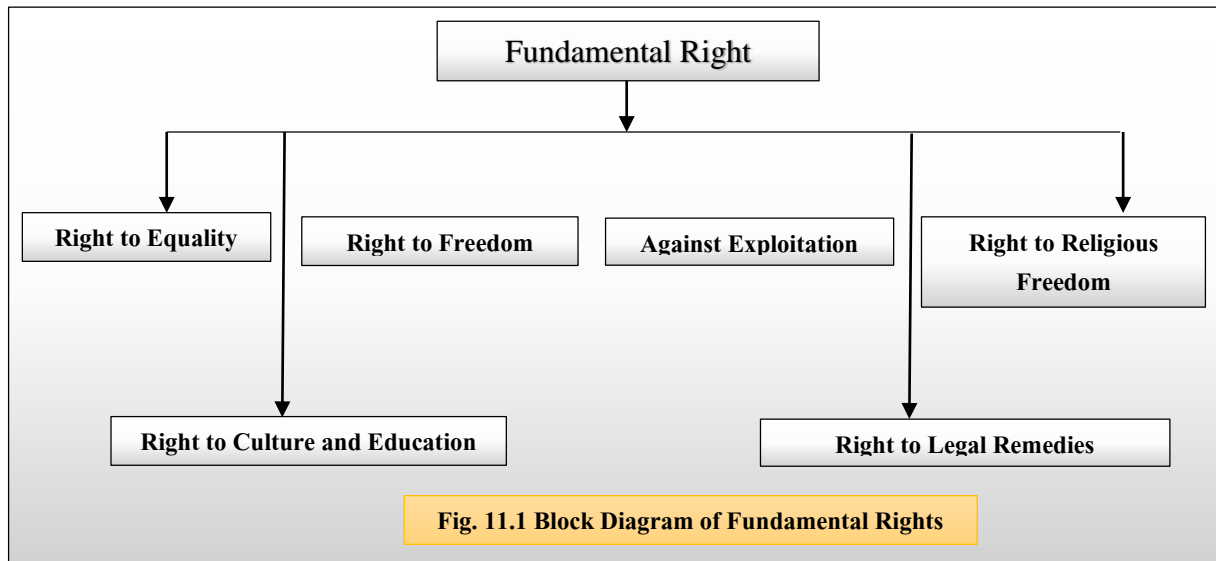
#### 5. Bicameral Legislature-

In the federal system of governance, the Indian Legislature (Parliament) has two houses - in which the Lok Sabha (lower house) represents the people and the Rajya Sabha (upper house) represents the states. The number of representatives in the Rajya Sabha has been fixed in proportion to the population of the States. In this, the representatives of the states are indirectly elected while the members of the Lok Sabha are elected directly by the people.

**Parliamentary System of Governance-** Under the federal system of governance, parliamentary governance has been adopted in our country because the parliamentary system of governance is better than other systems of governance in terms of responsibility. In a parliamentary system of governance, the constitutional chairman of governance is the President, and the executive is responsible to the Parliament. But in reality, the powers of the President are exercised by the Executive, that is, the Council of Ministers. There is also coordination between the executive and the legislature.

**Fundamental Rights-** The rights which are necessary for the all-round development and dignity of the person, which have been enshrined in the

Constitution of the country and which are protected by the Supreme Court, are called fundamental rights. Our Constitution provides for fundamental rights for



the all-round development of the individual. The fundamental rights in the Indian Constitution are derived from the Constitution of America. Part-3 of the Constitution describes fundamental rights from Articles 12 to 35. Fundamental rights have been defined in Article 12. Article 13 provides for laws inconsistent with or in derogation of fundamental rights. Originally a total of seven (7) fundamental rights were granted, but due to the removal of the right to property from the category of fundamental rights to legal rights by the 44th Constitutional Amendment of 1978, there are currently a total of 6 fundamental rights.

1. **Right to Equality-** Articles 14–18 mention the right to equality. According to the Constitution, every person is treated equally before the law, and everyone has equal protection of the law. The state means the government will not discriminate against any person on the basis of religion, race, caste, gender, color, or place of birth. Equal opportunities have been provided to all citizens regarding appointments to government posts. Untouchability has been abolished and declared a punishable offense, and only param Vir chakra, Mahavir chakra, Bharat Ratna, Padma Samman, etc. can be given as a mark of respect for military bravery and learning skills. The right to equality is not new to us. In our Vedic literature, it is mentioned that all the living beings of the world have been considered equal to themselves.

2. **Right to Freedom-** The right to freedom is described under Article 19-22. All the citizens of the country have the freedom to express their views, to live peacefully and without arms, to organize, to move around and live in India and to earn any business, job industry etc. There is a limit to the freedom enjoyed by every person, as long as there is no hindrance to the freedom of other people. The most important right among the fundamental rights is described in Article 21, which provides for life and physical freedom i.e. right to life. Article 21-(a) of the 86th Constitutional Amendment 2002, which



incorporates the Right to Education in the Right to Life, states that the State shall provide for free and compulsory primary education for all children between the ages of six years and fourteen years (6-14 years). If a person has been arrested, it is the duty of the police to present the arrested person in court within 24 hours. No person can be punished twice for the same offense.

The right to freedom guaranteed in Article 19 of the Constitution can be suspended by the order of the President in cases of external aggression or breach of internal peace, but it does not suspend the rights to protect freedom in Articles 20 and 21.

3. **Right against exploitation-** Article 23-24 mentions the right against exploitation. According to this, human abuse, unemployment and forced labor have been banned. Child labor has been abolished by prohibiting children below the age of 14 from being engaged in any factory, mine or other hazardous work.
4. **Right to Religious Freedom-** Articles 25-28 mention the religious freedom of citizens. All citizens have the right to practice and propagate a religion according to their conscience, but it can also be banned on the basis of public order, virtue and health. Keep in mind that it does not even provide the right to convert to anyone. Along with this, all religious sects have the right to acquire and manage property by establishing their institutions, such as temples, monasteries, digraphs, gurudwaras, etc. There is also a provision in the Indian Constitution that says that religious education cannot be given in any educational institution funded with the help of the government.
5. **Right to Culture and Education-** Article 29-30 mentions the right to culture and education. The Indian Constitution also gives citizens the right to get education and protect their culture. According to this, every section of citizens has the right to maintain their language, script or culture, and all minority sections based on religion and language have the right to establish and operate educational institutions of their interest.
6. **Right to Constitutional Remedies** Article 32 mentions the right to constitutional remedies. It is the instrument that protects the basic rights. Under this, every citizen can go to court for the protection of his rights. The court can strike down laws that violate fundamental rights. In this way, there is also a proper provision in the Constitution to enforce fundamental rights. The Court issues five types of decrees or writs for the protection of fundamental rights - habeas corpus, permit, prohibition, rights determination and abetment writ. Explaining the importance of the right to constitutional remedies, Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar has called it the heart and soul of the Constitution. Proper management, observance, etc. of fundamental rights are mentioned in Articles 33, 34, and 35 of the Constitution.

**Policy Directive Principles-** The Constitution of India incorporates the Directive Principles of Policy to provide socio-economic justice to all citizens by establishing a welfare state. Policy Directive Principles are the guidelines given

by the framers of the Constitution to the central government and state governments for the formulation of policies. It is also a guiding principle of behavior for all the officers of the government administration. It is expected that all the work should be completed according to them, but if the work is not done according to them, the citizens cannot appeal in court, as they can in the context of fundamental rights. The Policy Directive Principles of Policy are considered to be the duty of the government. The Policy Directive Principles of Policy are the dream of realizing the social and economic revolution in India. These elements in the Indian Constitution are taken from the Constitution of Ireland. These are mentioned in Articles 36–51. According to them, the executive and the legislature have to exercise their powers. They do not have judicial powers; that is, there cannot be a court procedure to comply with the matters of the Policy Directive Principles, but there can be a court procedure on compliance with those provisions when the Directive Principles are passed on the shelter.

### **Differences between Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles-**

The following are the important differences between fundamental rights and Policy directive principles:

1. Fundamental rights have legal power. Policy Directive principles have the power of public opinion. If a law of governance violates the fundamental rights of the citizen, then the court can declare that law illegal to protect it. If a law is made against the Policy Directive Principles of Policy, the Court cannot declare it illegal. But the state cannot easily disregard these principles due to fear of public opinion.
2. The system of fundamental rights is prohibitive, while the Policy Directive Principle is positive. In other words, fundamental rights prevent the government from doing certain things, while directive principles direct the government to fulfill its duty.
3. Fundamental rights aim at the establishment of political democracy, while directive principles of policy aim at the establishment of economic and social democracy.
4. The fundamental rights are for the citizens, while the Directive Principles are the duties of the Government. These are the instructions given for policy making and behavior of the government.

**Fundamental Duty-** When the Constitution of India came into force, there was no inclusion of fundamental duties. Only by explaining the basic rights, the citizens became aware of their rights, but remained indifferent to their duties. To fill this gap, the 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1976 added the basic duties of the citizens to Article 51-A in Part IV of the Constitution. The basic duties in our Constitution are derived from the Constitution of Russia. Initially, the number of basic duties was 10, but by the 86th Constitutional Amendment of 2002, the number had increased to 11. According to Article 51(a), it shall be the duty of every citizen of India to-

1. He should abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals, institutions, national emblem, national flag and national anthem.
2. Cherish and follow the high ideals that inspired our national movement for freedom.
3. Protect and keep India's sovereignty, unity and integrity intact.

4. Protect the country and serve the nation when called upon.
5. Create a spirit of harmony and equal brotherhood among all the people of India, which is above all discrimination based on religion, language and region or class, abandon such practices which are against the dignity of women.
6. Understand the importance of the glorious tradition of our integrated culture and preserve it.
7. Protect and promote the natural environment, including ponds, lakes, rivers, mountains, forests and wildlife, and have compassion towards animals.
8. Develop a scientific approach, humanism and a spirit of knowledge acquisition and reform.
9. Protect public property and stay away from violence.
10. Make constant efforts to move towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activities, so that the nation can constantly scale new heights of effort and achievement.
11. It is the duty of parents and guardians to provide educational opportunities for their child or guardian between the ages of six and fourteen years.

**Summary-** India has a democratic system of governance. Therefore, the citizens of India elect their representative using direct voting rights. After this, the government is elected by the elected representatives. Then the elected government does many things. Such as running the government, making new laws, amending old laws, etc. The source of political power in a democracy is the people, this is the basic principle of democracy. In a democratic polity, different groups and opinions of the society get due respect. Citizens are taken care of while formulating public policies. Therefore, it becomes necessary that there should be a partnership of more and more citizens in political power.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Presently how many state and union territories are there in India?
  - A. 29 States and 7 Union Territories
  - B. 28 States and 9 Union Territories
  - C. 28 States and 8 Union Territories
  - D. 29 States and 9 Union Territories
2. Who has the right to make laws on the subjects of concurrent list?
 

A. Central Government to	B. State Governments
C. Central and State	D. Governments
3. How many fundamental rights are available to Indian citizens?
 

A. 5	B. 6	C. 7	D. 8
------	------	------	------
4. Fundamental duties in the Indian Constitution. Was added.
 

A. 1976	B. 1978	C. 1975	D. 1977
---------	---------	---------	---------
5. Source of political power in democracy it happens.
 

A. Parliament	B. Vidhan Sabha
C. Janata	D. Sarkar

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Lok Sabha is called..... House. (Upper/Lower)
2. Among the fundamental rights.....The right has been removed.

(Property/Equality)

3. Fundamental Duties part in the Constitution .....added in. (4 / 7)
4. Indian constitution describes fundamental duties of citizen. (11/10)

### Tell the truth/ false-

1. India has a democratic system of governance. (True/False)
2. The Directive Principle is mentioned in Articles 36-51. (True/False)
3. India does not have a federal system of governance. (True/False)
4. There are fundamental rights in the Indian constitution.

### Match the pair correctly-

1. Union List A. Industry, Power, Forests and Environment Etc.
2. State List B. Railways, Finance, Defence Etc.
3. Concurrent List C. Agriculture, Local Government, Medicine Etc.
4. Residual list D. Remaining Subject

### Very short answer question-

1. What do you understand by federalism?
2. State any two characteristics of Indian federal system.
3. What is democratic decentralization?
4. Which article provides for protection of fundamental rights?
5. Do you understand the basic duty?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. Write down the characteristics of the federal system?
2. How has power been decentralized in India?
3. Describe the right against exploitation.
4. What do you understand by religious freedom?
5. Why is power sharing necessary?
6. What is the difference between Fundamental Duties and Directive Principles?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What is Federalism? Describe the main features of Indian federal system.
2. Describe the fundamental rights given to Indian citizens.
3. Explain power sharing in India.

### Project-

1. If someone around you is violating their basic rights, what advice would you give them?

## Chapter-12

### Public Welfare Schemes in India

**In this chapter-** Public Welfare Program, Education, Prasad Scheme, Swadesh Darshan Scheme, Food Security, Health and Medical, Housing, Employment, Labor Law, Pension and Insurance Schemes, Prime Minister Kisan Samman Nidhi Scheme, Public Welfare and Responsibility of Government, Information Right of way Act 2005.

In India, providing basic facilities with necessary social support, keeping in mind the basic needs of the citizens, is called **public welfare**. It is meant by a public welfare state to mean the all-round development of all the citizens of the state and to fulfill the needs of the individual by providing equality to the person from a political, economic, and social point of view. Public welfare is the highest goal of the state; it is also called social service. There are many forms of these social services. Such as education, health, food, employment, widowhood, old age pension, etc. The main objective of these services is to reach out to citizens by providing all kinds of security to the public.

After attaining independence, a public welfare state was established in democratic India. The Constitution has given the government the responsibility to conduct such programs and schemes, which establish economic, social and political justice. The Directive Principles of State Policy mentioned in Part IV of the Indian Constitution describe these responsibilities of the government, which are for the welfare of the people, and require the government to discharge these responsibilities. For this, the Central government and the state governments have enacted many such laws and programs, whose purpose has been public welfare. Many such schemes related to food, housing, medicine, education, and employment are being run. In this chapter we will study the major schemes.

The concept of Ramarajya, which is mentioned in ancient India, was based on the spirit of public welfare. In our Vedic literature, the happiness of the people is considered to be the happiness of the king. Vedic mystics have stated in their thinking that the basis of public welfare is knowledge. ब्रह्मराजन्याभ्यां शूद्राय चार्याय च स्वाय चारणाय च। (यजु. 26/2) in this mantra, the sage wishes that the whole world be healthy, happy and harmonious. यथा नः सर्वमिज्जगद् अयक्ष्मं सुमना असत्। (यजु. 16/4)

**Public Welfare Programs-** There are two types of public welfare programs and schemes of the government: first, those that are for ordinary citizens, and second, those that are for the upliftment of a particular class and connecting them to the mainstream of society. For example, schemes for below-the-line (BPL) living classes. In our country, both the central government and the State governments are conducting such programs. The chief among them are as follows-

**Education-** Education is most important for the development of a person's personality. The government gave education the status of a fundamental right (in 2002) and with free, compulsorily the Right to Child Education (in 2010) has been enacted. Under which there is a provision for free, compulsory and quality elementary education for children in the age group of 6 to 14 years. Scholarships and other facilities are provided to SC, ST and OBC, minority and disabled students, orphan students and other talented students. All students of classes 1 to 8 are provided lunch under the 'Mid-Day-Meal' scheme. Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalayas (in 1986) and Kasturba Gandhi Girls Residential Schools for Girl Education (2004) have been established by the Central Government in all the districts of the country. The Central Government has started the National Education Policy, under this scheme, the Education policy to be held in schools and colleges is prepared. Under the National Education Policy, education from pre-school to secondary school will be universalized with 100% GER in school education by 2030. Under this, the government has made many major changes to the education policy, earlier the pattern of 10 + 2 was followed, but now the pattern of 5 + 3 + 3 + 4 will be followed under the new education policy. There will be 12 years of schooling and 3 years of pre-school education. The main objective of national education policy 2020 is to bring the education provided in India to a global level. This scheme will improve the quality of education and students will get good education. PM Shri Yojana-2022 has been launched by the Prime Minister of India in the field of education. Through this scheme, 14500 old schools across India will be upgraded by beautiful structures, strong and attractive. Special emphasis will be laid on latest technology, smart classes, sports and modern infrastructure in these schools. Under the Programme of Action-1992 methodology, based on the National Education Policy 1986, the right to propagate the Vedas has been given under Vedic education. In order to preserve, promote and propagate the traditional knowledge available in the Vedas on the basis of Indian knowledge tradition, after the transfer of an institution called Rashtriya



**Figure- 12.1 National Adarsh Ved Vidyalaya, Ujjain, (M.P.) Run by Maharishi Sandipani Rashtriya Ved Vidya Pratishthan**

Ved Vidya Pratishthan to Ujjain by the Government of India in 1987, it was renamed as Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Ved Vidya Pratishthan.

**Prasad Scheme-** The Government of India launched the PRASAD (PRASAD) Scheme in 2014-2015 under the Ministry of Tourism. The full form of Prasad Yojana is '**Pilgrimage Rejuvenation and Spiritual Enhancement Campaign**'. The scheme focuses on developing and identifying pilgrimage sites across India to enrich the religious tourism experience. It aims to integrate pilgrimage sites in a prioritized, planned and sustainable manner to provide a holistic religious tourism experience. The development of domestic tourism largely depends on pilgrimage tourism. Harnessing the potential of pilgrimage tourism required the holistic development of selected pilgrimage sites along with cooperation from other stakeholders and the government. The Prasad scheme aims to pave the way for the development and promotion of religious tourism in India.

**Swadesh Darshan Scheme-** Swadesh Darshan Scheme is a Central Sector Scheme launched by the Ministry of Tourism and Culture, Government of India in the year 2014-15 with the objective of integrated development of thematic tourism circuit. The objective of this scheme is to promote, develop and exploit the potential of tourism in India. Under the Swadesh Darshan Scheme, the Ministry of Tourism provides Central Financial Assistance (CFA) to the State Governments, Union Territory Administrations for development of infrastructure of circuits. The scheme is envisaged to synergize with other schemes like Swachh Bharat Abhiyan, Skill India, Make in India etc. in which the tourism sector has been ranked as a major engine for employment generation, driving force for economic growth, building synergy with various sectors so that tourism realizes its potential.

**Food Security-** Citizens should also get two meals a day with dignity to live a life under the right to freedom. Keeping this in mind, the 'National Food Security Act' 2013, passed by the Government of India in parliament, was notified on September 10, 2013 with the objective of providing adequate quantities of good-quality food grains at affordable prices to the people to lead a dignified life. The Act provides for benefiting 75% of the rural population and 50% of the urban population by providing subsidized food grains under the **Targeted Public Distribution System (TPDS)**. Eligible Person: Rice, Wheat, or Coarse Cereals Rs. 3/3, the person is entitled to receive 5 kg of food grains per month at subsidized prices of Rs. 2/1 per kg. Recently, **antyodaya anna yojana** families, which include the poorest of the poor, which will continue to receive 35 kg of food grains per family per month.

The Act also places a special focus on nutritional support for women and children. Pregnant women and lactating mothers are also entitled to a maternity benefit of at least Rs. 6,000 in addition to food during pregnancy and 6 months after the birth of the child. Children up to the age of 14 also have the right to receive food as per the prescribed nutritional standards. In the event of a non-

supply of foodgrains or food to the officer, the beneficiaries will receive a food security allowance. The Act also provides for the setting up of mechanisms to deal with complaints at district and state levels and to ensure transparency and accountability.

**Health and Medicine-** The National Health Mission in India was launched by the Government of India in 2013 by combining the **National Rural Health Mission** (launched in 2005) and the National Urban Health Mission (launched in 2013). The main programmed related components of the mission include 'Reproductive-Maternal-Newborn-Child and Adolescent Health in Rural and Urban Areas (RMNCH+A) and Strengthening of Health System for Communicable and Non-Communicable Diseases'. Among the assistance provided by the National Health Mission is the provision of free services. The National Health Mission envisages universal access to equitable, affordable, and quality health care services that are responsive to the needs of the people. The major health services being provided by the said mission are:

- Janani Shishu Suraksha Karyakram (JSSK)
- National Child Health Programme (RBSK)
- Free Medicines and Free Diagnostic Services Initiative
- Prime Minister's National Dialysis Programme
- Implementation of National Quality Assurance Framework in all public health facilities.
- Mobile Medical Units (MMUs) and tele-consultation services are also being implemented to improve access to healthcare, especially in rural areas.
- Ayushman Bharat.
- Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana (Ayushman Bharat Yojana) (AB-PMJAY)

Today, many people are getting medical treatment from the above health related services.

**Housing accommodation-** Accommodation Housing is one of the basic necessities for the sustenance of human beings. The government is determined that no family should remain homeless in the future. For this, many schemes have been started. Such as **Pradhan Mantri Awas Yojana** and Indira Awas Yojana. Pradhan Mantri Awas Yojana is a scheme launched by the Central Government. The objective of this scheme is to provide housing to all in urban and rural areas to people of weaker income groups by 2022. For this, the government will construct 20 lakh houses, out of which 18 lakh will be built in the slum area and the remaining 2 lakh in the poor areas of the cities. That is, subsidies is provided on home loans to buy a house. This subsidy can be up to a maximum of Rs 2.67 lakh. Pradhan Mantri Awas Yojana (PMAY) was launched across the country on June 25, 2015. Earlier, land and financial assistance were provided for housing for economically weaker sections through the Indira Awas Yojana; this has now



been adjusted in the Prime Minister's Housing Scheme. Apart from the central government, many state governments are also running many schemes to provide affordable housing in their states.

**Employment-** Many schemes are being run by the Central Government to provide employment to the citizens: MNREGA, the National Rural Livelihood Mission, the **Pradhan Mantri Kaushal Vikas Yojana**, etc. Under the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2006 (MGNREGA), a minimum of 100 days of employment is guaranteed by the government to provide a minimum of 100 days of employment to an unskilled worker registered in rural areas on demand for employment. An unemployment allowance is given to him if employment is not available within fifteen (15) days. Along with employment, many works of regional development are also being completed through this scheme. The National Rural Livelihoods Mission is a poverty alleviation project run by the Ministry of Rural Development, Government of India, with the main objective of enabling the poor to self-employment. In addition, **Pradhan Mantri Kaushal Vikas Yojana (PMKVY)** is also a scheme of the Government of India to provide employment, which was launched in July 2015. Under this scheme, it was planned to train one crore youth by 2020. The objective of this scheme is to provide employment to people who are less educated or drop out of school midway.

**Labor Law-** To protect the workers and workers from exploitation, their working hours and minimum wages have been fixed. They have also been given the right to weekly leave. A provision of equal wages has also been made for equal work. Labor laws have been enacted to resolve their labor related disputes.

**Pension and Insurance Schemes-** The government is providing pensions to the elderly, widows, disabled people, single women, specially qualified people, and other selected needy people every month, and social security is being provided to them. The government is also providing protection to citizens through health insurance and accident insurance.

The Pradhan Mantri Suraksha Bima Yojana was launched in May 2015. The scheme offers an annual premium of only Rs 12 and insurance benefits up to Rs 2 lakh in case of accidental death or disability. The main objective of this scheme is to provide social security to the common people at an affordable cost. In the Pradhan Mantri Suraksha Bima Yojana and Pradhan Mantri Jeevan Jyoti Bima Yojana, it is mandatory for the insured to have a bank account. Crop insurance for farmers' crops and livestock insurance for animals are also being provided.

**Pradhan Mantri Kisan Samman Nidhi Yojana-** Pradhan Mantri Kisan Samman The Nidhi Yojana is one of the important schemes of the Government of India. The objective of this scheme is to provide financial assistance to small and marginal farmers who have less than 2 hectares (4.9 acres) of land, ensuring the highest harvest and right yield along with the procurement of crops to meet

the economic needs of all eligible farmers. Under this scheme, Rs. 6,000 per year is paid to each eligible farmer in three installments. The scheme was implemented on December 1, 2018.

**Public Welfare and the Responsibility of the Government-** In order to ensure smooth implementation of public welfare schemes and the people covered under the scheme benefit from the scheme, it is very important to keep in mind that the citizens should be aware of the public welfare schemes of the Government of India and have the right to get information regarding the implementation of public welfare schemes. Therefore, the Government has passed the following Acts to make public services accessible to the people and to make the administration sensitive, responsible and transparent.

**Right to Information Act 2005-** Provisions have been laid down in the Act for promoting transparency and accountability in the functioning of every public authority, establishing a practical system of governance for citizens' right to information to ensure access to information under the control of public authorities, establishing a Central Information Commission and a State Information Commission, and providing for matters connected therewith or incidental thereto. In any democratic country, it should be the right of the citizens to know about the policies and functioning of the government. For this, the Right to Information Act 2005 was implemented by the Central Government on October 12, 2005, in the entire country. Under this Act, any citizen can seek factual information from the concerned department of the government regarding the policy, scheme, work, and transactions of the government. For any information related to any government or public office, the process of getting information at a fixed time is very simple. For this, an application has to be written on plain paper with the information sought on it and submitted to the information officer of the concerned office or department. For this, a fee of Rupees 10 is paid by cash or Indian postal order. The information received in this way gives us an idea of the reality of the government's work and exposes corruption and neglect by the personnel.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which of the following are public welfare schemes-  
A. Food and Accommodation  
B. Medicine  
C. Education and Employment  
D. All of The Above
2. What is the other name of Ayushman Bharat Yojana (ABY) -  
A. Antyodaya Yojana  
B. Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana  
C. Chief Minister Free Medicine and Testing Scheme-  
D. Indira Awas Yojana
3. When was the Organization named Rashtriya Vedvidya Pratishthan-  
A. 1986  
B. 2012  
C. 1985  
D. 1987
4. When was the Right to Information Act implemented in India?

A. 2005

B. 2006

C. 2007

D. 2009

### Fill in the blanks-

1. Right to Education . . . implemented in. (2008/2010)
2. In the Ayushman Bharat scheme, free treatment up to ..... is provided.  
(2 lakh/5 lakh)
3. The highest goal of the public welfare state is.....  
(Public Service/Private Service)
4. The Right to Information act came in to farce in India (2009/2003)

### Tell the truth/false-

1. Right to Information came into force in 2005. (True/False)
2. India is a public welfare state. (True/False)
3. Kisan Samman Nidhi, assistance of Rs 10 thousand is given to farmers.  
(True/False)
4. PMSHN scheme started in 2022 (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1. Ayushman Bharat Yojana               | A. 2005 |
| 2. Pradhan Mantri Bima Suraksha Yojana  | B. 2018 |
| 3. National Rural Health Mission Scheme | C. 2015 |
| 4. Prasad schemes                       | D. 2014 |

### Very short answer question-

1. What is the minimum number of days of employment provided in Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee (MGNREGA)?
2. When was the Right to Information Act enacted?
3. In which law is the provision of equal wages for equal work made?
4. Name any five ongoing schemes of public welfare by the government.
5. Which institution was formed with the aim of preserving, promoting and propagating the traditional knowledge available in the Vedas?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What do you understand by public welfare state?
2. To whom are the people being given pension by the government?
3. Write any three features of the Right to Education Act 2009.
4. Explain clearly about Prasad's plan.
5. What do you know about Swadesh Darshan Scheme? What is the purpose of this scheme?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. Describe any two public welfare schemes of the Central Government.
2. Describe the Right to Information Act- 2005.
3. What are the objectives of the Food Security Act? Which scheme related to food grains is going on in India?
4. Which scheme is being run by the Government of India for health and Medicine?

### Project-

1. Dear students! Make a list of schemes run by the Central and State Governments in your area

---

# VedBhushan 5<sup>th</sup> Year Economics



## Chapter-13

### Sector of Indian Economy and its Infrastructure

**In this chapter-** Sectors of economy, national income from sectors of economy, historical changes in sectors of economy, growing importance of tertiary sector in production, organized sector, unorganized sector, importance of sectors of economy, infrastructure of development of economy, Transport, Transport Resources, Land Transport, Pipeline Transport, Water Transport, Air Transport, Communication, Banking, Insurance and Finance, Education and Health, Trade and Tourism.

Dear students! You must have seen many people you doing various types of activities to make a living in daily life. Someone is engaged in farming, someone is engaged in a factory or does business. It is from these activities that he gets income. To understand the economy properly, it is necessary to study those in which the manpower of the country is employed.

In these activities, some produce goods and some create services. These activities take place all the time around us. These activities can be divided into different groups based on some important parameters. These groups are called sectors of the economy. Economists can divide economic activity into three groups based on some important parameters. These groups are called sectors of the economy.



Figure- 13.1 Animal Husbandry

**Sectors of Economy-** There are three sectors of the economy - primary sector, the secondary sector and tertiary sector. Primary sector: The primary area of Activities based directly on natural resources are called primary sectors. In other words, when we produce a commodity using natural resources, it is called primary sector activity. This sector is mainly based on agriculture, so the primary sector is also called agriculture and allied sectors. Agriculture can be taken as an example. Crops have to depend mainly on natural factors, such as soil, rainfall, sunlight, air, etc., to grow. Therefore, agricultural produce is a natural product. It includes agriculture, animal husbandry, poultry, mining, fisheries, dairy, etc. The products that are obtained from these activities are called primary products.

**Secondary Sector-** The sector of the economy in which activities convert the products of the primary sector into manufacturing. Therefore, this area is also called an industrial area. For example, making machines from iron or making cloth from cotton etc. This is the next step after the primary activities. Objects in



Fig. 13.2 Sugar mill

this region are not directly produced by nature, but are produced by human actions. These actions can take place in a factory or home. Since this sector is associated with different types of industries, it is also called industrial area. Other examples are cement industry, textile industry, iron and steel industry, sugar industry, auto industry etc.

**Tertiary Sector-** The activities of this sector are different from those of the primary and secondary sectors. The activities of the tertiary sector do not produce goods on their own but cooperate in the production process. For example, goods produced by the primary and secondary sectors need to be transported by truck to be sold in wholesale and retail markets. Warehouses are required to keep goods made by industries. Thus, activities related to transport, storage, communication, banks, trade, etc. come under the tertiary sector. It is only through the expansion of these activities that economic growth gains momentum. Since the activities of the tertiary sector create services in place of goods, it is also called the **service sector**.

**National Income from the Sectors of the Economy-** The primary, secondary, and tertiary sectors of a country are considered the basis for calculating the national income, or gross domestic product (GDP), of that country. For this, the monetary value of production obtained from these three sectors is first calculated. Then the monetary value derived from these different sectors is added. Thus, the gross domestic product (GDP) or national income figures of the country are obtained. Along with economic growth, while income from primary, secondary and tertiary sectors increases, their comparative contribution also changes. It has been observed that as a country develops economically, the contribution of the primary sector to the total national income gradually decreases, and the contribution of the tertiary or service sector increases.

**Historical Changes in the Sectors of The Economy-** It has often been observed that in most developed countries, the primary sector has been the most important sector in the early stages of development. As economic growth occurs in a country, the contribution of the primary sector to the total national income gradually decreases, with many of the people who previously worked in agriculture starting to work in factories. Due to the use of goods produced at cheap rates in factories, the secondary sector became the most important in terms of total production and employment, but in the past 100 years, there has been a shift from the secondary sector to tertiary in developed countries. And the contribution of the tertiary or service sector increases. According to the Economic Survey of India 2021–22, India's gross domestic product declined by 7.3%

(2020–21). But economists have projected a growth rate of 9.3% in the years 2021-22 and this growth rate can be 8–8.50% in the years 2022-23.

**Increasing importance of tertiary sector in production-** In the last 5 decades, production has increased in all sectors of the economy. But the maximum increase has been in the production of the tertiary sector. As a result, the tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producer in India, overtaking the primary sector and the secondary sector. Among the important reasons for the tertiary sector in India are banks, insurance, education, medical, transport, etc. In developing countries, these services are managed by the government. With the development of agriculture and industries, the importance of the tertiary sector has increased due to the development of services like trade, transport, and storage. In India, although the share of the three sectors in GDP has changed, there has not been a significant change in employment. The reason for the non-transfer of employment from the primary sector is that there is not enough creation of employment opportunities in secondary and tertiary sector. As a result, almost half of the people in the country are working in the primary sector, particularly in the agriculture sector. Which contributes less than 15% to the GDP. The remaining half are engaged in secondary and tertiary section. Which contributes more than 85% to the GDP.

**Organized Sector-** The sector that is registered by the government and in which government rules and laws are followed is called the organized sector. In the organized sector, the employer gives an appointment letter to the employees, in addition to the monthly salary allowances and service conditions of the employee, provident fund, weekly leave, medical leave, and 6 months of maternity leave for female employees, etc.

**Unorganized Sector-** The sector that is not registered by the government and in which government rules and laws are not followed is called an unorganized sector. Compliance with service rules in the unorganized sector does not provide employment security to the employee. There is also mental and economic exploitation of employees in this area. The unorganized sector employee does not get any benefit other than salary.

### **Importance of service sector**

**Importance of Sectors of Economy-** All three sectors of production contribute to the creation of national income. Earlier The contribution of sectors of the economy was very less, but the situation has changed today from both income and employment points of view. Along with economic development, the importance of sectors of the economy has also increased. The importance of sectors of the economy as a component of employment and income can be understood from the following points:

1. Increase in employment
2. Expansion of market
3. Balanced Economic Growth

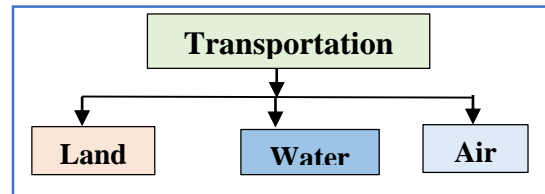
4. Contribution to national income
5. Increase in production
6. Protection of agricultural produce and development of agriculture
7. Security of the Country
8. Receipt of foreign exchange

**Infrastructure of Development of Economy-** Infrastructure or infrastructure, as the name implies, provides the basis for the economic development of primary and secondary sectors of production. The progress of any country depends on the development of agriculture and industries. But agricultural production itself requires means of energy, finance, transport, etc. Similarly, in industries, machinery, management, energy, banks, insurance, transportation etc. are required for production. All these facilities and services together are called the infrastructure of the economy. In other words, infrastructure refers to facilities, actions and services that help in the operation and development of other areas of production and in daily life. The main components of the infrastructure of economic development are:

1. **Energy-** The economic development of any country depends on the sources of energy available. Because energy is required in all sectors like agriculture, industry, minerals, transport etc. There are various sources of energy, such as electricity, coal, natural and gas etc.
2. **Transportation-** In Vedic literature, chariots are first used in the means of transport, which is referred to in the following mantra- दिशश्चतस्रोऽश्वतार्योऽदेवथस्य पुरोडाआशाः शफा अन्तरिक्षमुद्भिः. द्यावापृथिवी पक्षसी ऋतवोऽभीशवोऽन्तर्देशाः किंकरा वाक्परिरथ्यम् ॥ In the above mantra, king Parikshit also describes the cultivation of ashwatri (mule) in the chariot along with the plowing of 20 camels in the chariot. In the Vedas, there is a detailed description of each part of the chariot (wheel, navel, etc.). The chariot was the main mode of transport. This chariot was used in transport, sports, and war.

Transport has an important place in the economy of any country. Transportation is important from both economic and social perspectives. In fact, transport acts as a link connecting producers with consumers. There are many modes of transport, such as bullock carts, buses, trucks, tractors, water vessels, rails, airplanes, etc.

**Transport Resources-** Transportation in India was initially developed mainly from the point of view of business and administrative facilities. But, during the five-year plans after independence, transport was expanded keeping in mind the overall economic development. In short, the development of modes of transport in the country can be understood as follows:



**Land Transport-** Site transport can be divided into road transport, rail transport and pipeline transport.



**Road Transport-** Roads have special importance in India. Since India is a country of villages, roads have an important place in terms of increasing production and increasing employment opportunities in rural areas. In the past, many ambitious schemes were implemented, in which the **Golden Quadrilateral Road Scheme** was very important, under which the Government of India completed the 6-lane Maharaja Marg Road project connecting the four metropolitan cities of the country (Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai, Mumbai in 2012-2015) is a National Highways Development Project. Under this, apart from the new highway, projects that are still incomplete will also be completed. This includes development projects with border and international connectivity. The project also includes up gradation of ports and roads, national corridors and the development of national corridors. Apart from this, national highways connecting backward areas and religious and tourist places will be built. Connectivity between Char Dham Kedarnath, Badrinath, Yamunotri, and Gangotri will be improved. India ranks second in the world in road transport. Road transport in the country accounts for 87.4% of the total transport in the country.

**National Highways-** National highways connect the major cities of the country. They are constructed and maintained by the Central Public Works Department (CPWD). The busy National Highways are being converted into 6 lanes by the Central Government. The longest National Highway 7 in India is from Varanasi to Kanyakumari (distance 2389 km) and the shortest National Highway 47A is from Wellington Island to Kochi (distance 6 km). At present (2021), the number of National Highways is 221 and their total length is 1,64,000 km.

Table 13.1 Major National Highways of India			
National Highway	From where to where	National Highway	From where to where
NH 1	Delhi to Amritsar	NH 7	Varanasi to Kanyakumari
NH 2	Delhi to Kolkata	NH 8	Delhi to Mumbai
NH 3	Agra to Mumbai	NH 17	Panvel to Iddapeli
NH 4	Police Station to Mumbai	NH 24	Delhi to Lucknow
NH 5	Baharagoda to Chennai	NH 47 A	From Washington Island to Cochin
NH 6	Kolkata to Hazira	NH 1 A	Jalandhar to Uri

**State Highways-** The roads in the interior of the states, which connect the state capital, district headquarters, important cities with each other and the national highways and the main highways connecting the neighboring states, are called state highways. The construction and maintenance of them in the states and union

territories is the responsibility of the Public Works Department (PWD) of the states. Maharashtra ranks first in the length of most state routes.

**Main District Roads (MDR)** - Connect various tehsils and towns of the district to or to the district headquarters. The responsibility of construction and maintenance of these roads lies with the District Council.

**Other Roads-** This category includes roads that connect rural areas to cities. The project aims to connect every village in the country with major cities through paved roads. To achieve this objective, Pradhan mantra gram sadak yojana was announced by former Prime Minister Shri Atal Bihari Vajpayee on December 25, 2000.

**Border Roads-** The construction and maintenance of border roads is done by the Border Roads Organization under the Government of India Authority. The Border Roads Organization was formed in 1960 to develop roads of strategic importance in the north and north-eastern regions. The development of these roads has supported the economic development and defense preparedness in India by the development of road transport in the border areas.

**Rail Transport-** Railways are the most convenient mode of transport for the transportation of goods and passengers in India. The railway was started in 1853 when the first train ran from Bombay to Thane. After this, there was an all-round development of railway routes in the country. The first electrified railway in India was run between Mumbai and Kurla in 1925 during the tenure of Lord Reading, named Deccan Queen. There are three types of railway lines in India which are named on the basis of the distance between the tracks. Indian Railways is administratively divided into 17 zones and 73 divisions. With a total length of 65,808 km, Indian Railways is the largest rail system in Asia and the third largest in the world. To connect the western coastal areas in India, a railway line has been laid from Roha in Maharashtra to Mangalore in Karnataka, which is called **Kankan Railway**. This railway line passes through Surang **Karbude**, a mountain

Table 13.2		
Sl.	Sl. Railway line	Sl. Distance between tracks (in meters)
1.	Broad Gauge	1.676
2.	Meter Gauge	1.000
3.	Narrow Gauge	0.762

railway in Maharashtra. It is the second longest rail tunnel in India. The largest rail tunnel in India is **Pir-Panjal** (Kashmir). Due to the development of trains, today we can travel from north (Jammu) to south (Rameswaram) and east

(New Delhi Gudi) to west (Dwarka) in all four directions.

**Pipeline Transport-** Pipelines are a new mode of transport in India. It is used to transport crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas refineries and fertilizer factories and thermal power to the planet. The three routes of pipeline transport in the country are as follows:

1. From the oil fields of Upper Assam to Kanpur (U.P.) via Guwahati, Barauni and Allahabad.

2. From Salwa in Gujarat to Viram village, Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat via Punjab to Jalandhar. Its other branch connects Koyali near Vadodara to Chakshu and other places.
3. It connects Hazira (Gujarat) to Jagdishpur (U.P.). This pipeline passes through Vijaypur (MP). It has branches in Kota in Rajasthan and Shahjahanpur Barala in Uttar Pradesh and other places.

**Water Transport-** India's water transport system is of two types, first is internal water transport and second is coastal and sea water transport. Internal water transport takes place in deep rivers and canals and uses boats and steamers. India's coastline is about 7600 km long and is manned by 13 large and 187 small and medium ports (ports for sea ships to stop, take fuel and unload goods.) is. India's main foreign trade is through large ports. At present, there are about 14,500 km of inland navigational waterways in the country. Out of the total nine operational waterways in India, only 5685 km is covered. The route itself is decided by mechanized boats. The following waterways have been declared as National Waterways by the Government of India:

According to a survey conducted by the Ministry of Surface Transport, Government of India, there are 10 river routes in the country where adequate amount of water is available throughout the year. Only such river routes have been declared as water national waterways.

**Sea-plane Service Scheme-** Seaplane can fly from both water and land. On October 31, 2017, the Prime Minister launched a 200 km sea-plane service from Sabarmati River Front (Ahmedabad) to The Statue of Unity (Kevadia), which is promoting tourism. The scheme is planned to be implemented in other areas of the country as well.

**Air Transport-** Air transport is the fastest and prestigious means of transport. The importance of this fast-moving means is evident in a physically diverse and vast country like India, air transport plays an important role in connecting the inaccessible parts of the country.

Air transport in India started in 1911, when the world's first postal service was transported between Allahabad and Naini. Air transport was nationalized in 1953. Air India provides international air services while Indian Airlines and many private airlines provide domestic air services. The International Airports Authority of India manages four major airports in the country - Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata and Chennai. Today we can go from north to south and east to west parts of the country by air transport in 6 hours.

**Communication-** Communication is one of the largest in the communication system in India. The first communication service in the country was started in 1837. But the expansion of these services has happened only after independence. Economic reforms that began in 1991 led to revolutionary changes in remote communication services. Private sector participation gave the sector unprecedented expansion. The means of modern communication are mainly

mobile phones, telephones, the internet, Twitter, WhatsApp, Facebook, Telegram, television, computers, laptops, e-mails, etc., which we know as social media.

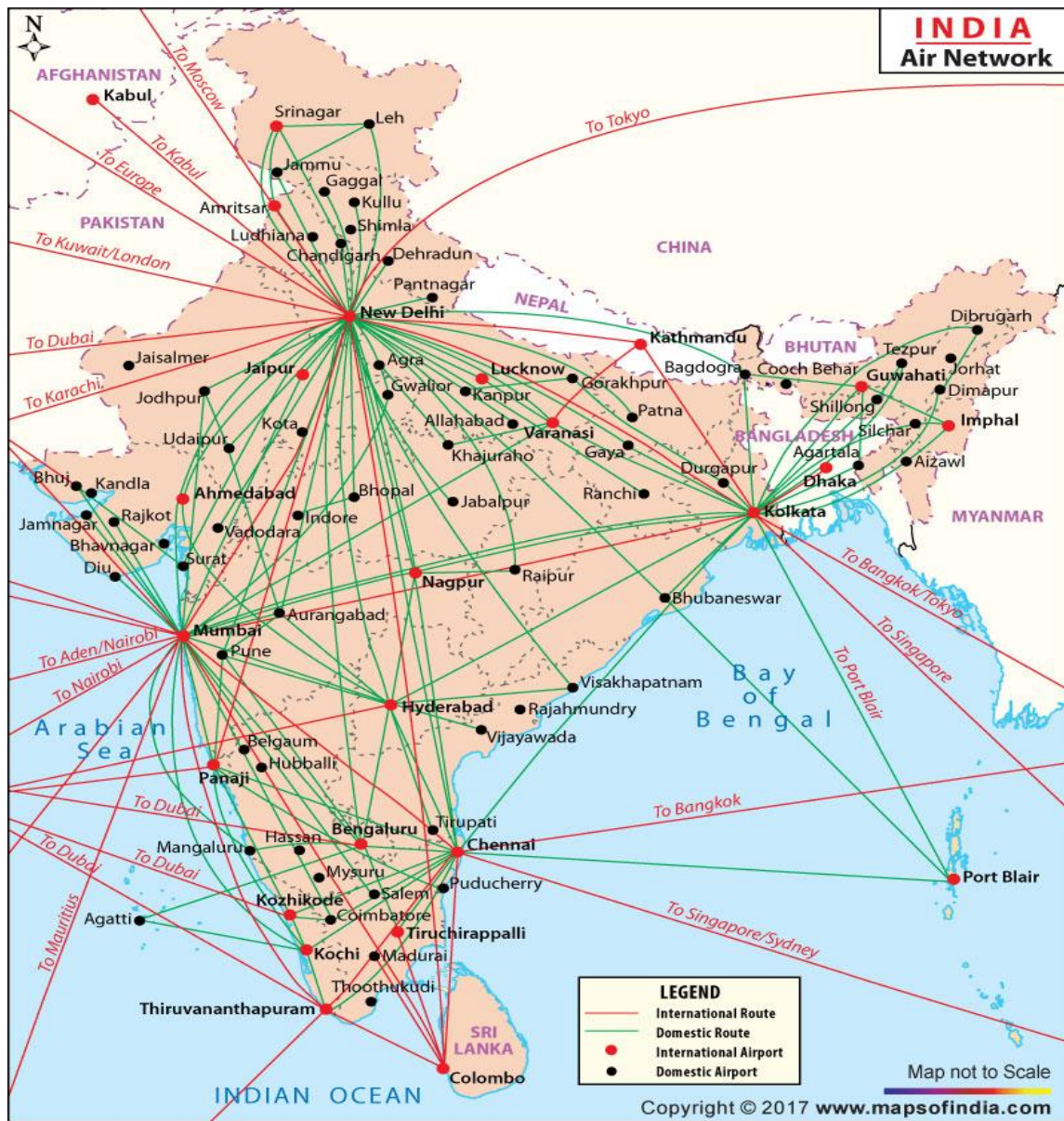


Figure- 13.4 Air Routes and Airports of India

**Banking, Insurance & Finance-** Banking, Insurance, and Finance are important places for rapid economic growth. The reason is that these institutions collect savings from the economy and make them available to entrepreneurs for investment. This leads to an expansion of economic activity and consequently increases income, employment, and growth momentum.

**Education and Health-** The experience of developed countries shows that economic development is not possible in the absence of social infrastructure like education and health. But it has been observed that due to a lack of resources in backward and developing countries, adequate attention is not paid to education,

training, health, etc. In India too, these facilities have expanded during the five-year plans after independence

**Trade and Tourism-** According to the 2022 report, India has overtaken the United Kingdom to become the world's fifth-largest economy. Now the economies of the United States, China, Japan, and Germany is bigger than those of India. India is set to become the third-largest economy by 2029, with real gross domestic product (GDP) growing by 6–6.5% in a world full of uncertainties. Tourism is the largest service industry in India, contributing 6.23% to the national gross domestic product (GDP) and 8.78% to India's total employment.

## Question

### Multiple Choice Questions-

- Sectors of any economy is.  
A. 5                      B. 3                      C. 6                      D. 8
- Tertiary sector to also known as.  
A. Agriculture Sector                      B. Manufacturing Sector  
C. Service Sector                      D. Subsidiary Sector
- Which has been the most important area in the early stages of Development?  
A. Tertiary Sector                      B. Agriculture Sector  
C. Secondary                      D. Primary Area
- Which of the following is a land transport?  
A. Road Transport                      B. Rail Transport  
C. Pipeline Transport                      D. All of The Above
- What is the position of Indian Railways The continent of Asia?  
A. 1st                      B. 2nd                      C. 3rd                      D. 4th
- Among the following it is the cheapest mode of transport.  
A. Water                      B. Road                      C. Air                      D. All of The Above

### Fill in the blanks-

- Air Transport in India ..... started in. (1905/1911)
- In broad gauge ..... the distance tracks is.  
(1.676 m/1.000 m)
- The four metropolitan cities.....have been linked by  
(Golden Quadrilateral Project/National Highway)
- Is the largest service industry in India (tourism/Education)

### Tell the truth/ false-

- Water transport is the most expensive transport. (True/False)
- Railways in India started on April 16, 1853. (True/False)
- The coastline of India is about 7600 kilometers long. (True/False)
- Air transport in India started in 1911. (True/False)
- Pir panjal is the longest railway tunnel in India. (True/False)

### Very short answer question-

- Name the sectors of the economy.

2. Give any two examples of tertiary sector.
3. Why was there no transfer of employment from the primary sector?
4. What was the name of India's first electrified railway?
5. Which is the fastest mode of transport?
6. How many miles of coastline of any country occupies the sea.
7. What are the main means of communication?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. Explain the secondary sector
2. Why is the tertiary sector important in the Indian economy?
3. What is the difference between Organized and Unorganized Sector?
4. Give any five reasons for the increase in the importance of road transport over rail transport.
5. Describe the types of structure.

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What is the sector of economy? Describe all the three sector.
2. Roads in India are divided into how many sections? Describe it.
3. Explain briefly the subject of its organs, explaining the meaning of the substructure.

### Project-

1. List the major ports of India and the major goods imported and exported from them .
2. Which ports are there near your state?

## Chapter-14

### Development and Consumer Awareness

**In this chapter-** National development, comparison of different countries or states, national income, income and other parameters, sustainability of development, consumer awareness, consumer movement, rights of consumer, duties of consumer, major certification marks.

Vedic students! Any positive change in any society, country, and world that leads to the progress of both nature and human beings towards progress is called development. The term development was used by social scientists, economists, and policy planners, especially in the field of economics after the Second World War. This also led to differences between developed and developing countries. In fact, development is an ongoing process that leads to positive change. In this chapter, we will study consumer awareness and development.

**National Development-** National development means improvement in the health facilities, social facilities, level of education, per capita income, etc. of the citizens of a country. The countries where the above facilities are at a high level are called developed countries and countries where the said facilities are at a low level are called underdeveloped countries.

**Comparison of different countries or states-** Income is the major component in comparing countries or states from the point of view of development. Countries with higher incomes are considered more developed than low-income countries. If the income of the person is high, then he is able to buy the items he needs. The total income of a country is not an appropriate measure to compare countries because the population of all countries is different. Therefore, per capita income between countries or states has been considered as a criterion for comparison.

**National Income-** National income is the total value of all goods and services produced by that country in a financial year. National income is the sum of the income of all the means of production in the country, not the income of the people of the country. National income is the monetary measure of the economic performance of the economy.

**Calculation of National Income in India-** Before independence, there was no government institution to calculate national income in India. The first calculation of national income in colonial India was done by Shri Dada Bhai Naoroji in 1868. After independence, in 1955, the Central Statistical Organization (CSO) was entrusted with the task of calculating national income by the Government of India. Since 1955, the CSO has been working on calculating the national income in India. The financial year in India is from April 1 to March 31.

**Per capita income-** When the total national income of a country is divided by the total population of the country, it is called per capita income. Per capita

income is also called average income. Per capita income has been considered a criterion for comparison between countries or states. According to the data for the years 2021–22, the per capita income in India is about Rupees 93,973.

$$\text{Per capita income} = \frac{\text{National Income}}{\text{Population}}$$

**Income And Other Parameters-** The World Bank uses per capita income criteria to classify different classes. This does not show how this income is distributed among the people. Even if the per capita income of two countries is equal, one country can be better than the other. The economic development of the country cannot be accurately estimated. Many other factors affect growth. Such factors as infant mortality rate, literacy, health facilities, etc. are not given importance. The simplest way to measure growth is to consider average income. The World Bank places countries in the developed, developing, and underdeveloped categories on the basis of average income. The World Bank has reduced India's growth rate to 7.5 percent for the financial year 2022–23. But it has been emphasized that India's growth rate will remain at the top. This has been attributed to geopolitical tensions compensating for rising inflation, supply chain disruptions, and a boom in the recovery of service consumption from the pandemic.

**Public Facilities-** Facilities that are available to all are called public facilities. Such as- means of transport, schools, colleges, hospitals, gardens, banks etc.

**Sustainability of development-** By sustainability, we mean to have a continuous process that maintains the satisfaction of the needs of the current breed without harming the productivity of the future breed. Development should remain for the future generation at a higher level; this is called the sustainability of development. The subject of sustainability is important for development because, without it, development is incomplete. Unless the inequalities of unemployment, poverty, wealth and income are eliminated in the country and the environment is preserved along with economic growth, development cannot take place in the true sense. Such development is possible only when we use resources judiciously in exchange for exploitation. From the point of view of exploitation of natural resources, water is a renewable resource, but in many parts of the country, there has been a serious crisis due to overexploitation of ground water. Therefore, we should avoid overexploitation of resources.

**Consumer Awareness-** Whenever a person buys the final goods and services to satisfy his need, his participation in the market increases. Thus a consumer is the person who buys the market. If the producers exploit the side of the consumers for the purpose of increasing the sales of their product in every possible way or do not get the benefit/convenience from the goods or services according to the buyer's price, then this situation is called consumer exploitation.

**For example-** weighing less weight, charging high prices, selling adulterated and defective goods, misleading consumers by giving misleading advertisements,



etc. In this way, it is necessary to make the consumer aware so that he cannot be cheated in the market. Thus, consumer awareness refers to making the consumer aware of his rights and duties.

**Types of Consumer Exploitation-** The consumer has been exploited in many ways. Exploitation is divided into two classes: exploitation as goods or services and exploitation as services. Exploitation of the consumer as a commodity refers to the decrease in the weight, quantity, weight, and measurement of the commodity, the non-occurrence of the stated variety, impurity or adulteration, etc. Exploitation of the consumer as a service means non-delivery of quality satisfactorily on time as per the terms of service, unsafe and defective service, causing harm in place of convenience or benefit and causing physical, mental, intellectual harm, etc.

**Causes of consumer exploitation-** The main reasons for consumer exploitation include ignorance, lack of written and unwritten complete information related to goods, monopoly, indifference of consumers towards the market, telemarketing, relying on written publicity on packing of goods after attractive and misleading advertisements, uneducated, unorganized, and satisfied feelings of consumers, purchase of goods or services irrespective of their purity and standard, etc.

**Diagnosis of Consumer Exploitation-** The main ways to avoid exploitation as a consumer are as follows:

- The government has enacted several laws to protect consumers, those laws and rights, there should be proper consumer education and awareness. One should always buy standardized items from the market. ISI Objects with emblematic, AGMARK and hallmarks are standardized. Along with buying an item, it is very important to take its cash memo. With this, legal action can be taken in case the item is damaged, substandard or expired before the scheduled time.
- Goods should be purchased after thorough investigation, not to be misled by advertisements. Exploitation can be avoided by collectively complaining against the producer and the seller. Before buying the item, it should be purchased by looking at the date of spoilage.

**Consumer Movement-** The consumer movement has started due to the dissatisfaction of the consumers. There were many reasons for dissatisfaction among the consumers, such as shortage of food items, hoarding, black marketing, adulteration, etc. To deal with these problems, the '**Essential Commodities Act**' was first passed in 1955. The '**Bat and Measurement Standards Act**' was passed in 1976 to organize the measurement of goods. Later in 1986, the '**Consumer Protection Act**' was passed by the Government of India. Subsequently, on July 20, 2020, the '**New Consumer Protection Act**' 2019 was enacted which will empower consumers and its various notified rules and consumer protection councils, consumer disputes redressed commissions, arbitration, product liability and adulteration. Will help protect their rights

through provisions such as punishment for the manufacture or sale of products containing counterfeit goods. The new Act will dispose of the works faster and in less time than the old Consumer Protection act, 1986. The old Act used to take longer due to single-point access to justice. Awareness camps are also organized by the Government of India at various levels to create awareness about consumer rights. December 24 is celebrated as National Consumer Day in India.

**Consumer Rights-** Consumer rights and duties Consumers have the right to buy good goods and services from the market. The seller or producer has been protected by law so that he cannot cheat him in any way. Generally, the consumer has the following rights.

- Right to security
- Right to Information
- Right to choose
- Right to indemnity redressed
- Right to Consumer Education

**Duties of the Consumer-** In addition to the efforts of governance, the consumer himself should also perform certain duties and responsibilities. The consumer shall perform his following duties while purchasing/renting goods or services to avoid exploitation or loss:

1. To obtain and maintain the details of the receipt, bill, purchase contract, etc. for payment of the prices of goods and services purchased.
2. To increase or decrease consumption according to the supply of the commodity.
3. Be aware of consumer custodian rules.
4. To discourage black marketing and smuggling.
5. One must complain about the real problem, no matter how little the value of the commodity is. This reduces the tendency of sellers to cheat.
6. ISI, F.P.O. Buying goods by looking at symbols such as egg mark and wool marks.

**Key Certification Marks-** The Government of India has constituted some institutions that certify the quality of goods.

- **ISI (Indian Standards Institute)** - This mark is allowed to be placed on the object if it has the best quality and criteria. It was established on January 6, 1947. On Jan 1, 1987, it was renamed as Bureau of Indian Standards (BIS).
- **Agmark-** Agmark's full name is Agriculture Marketing. Its mark is approved by the Indian Directorate of Marketing and Inspection on Good Quality Agricultural and Food Products.
- **FPO (Farmer Product Organization)** – It is a group of farmers and it registers farmers who carry out activities based on agriculture.
- **Hallmark-** Hallmark is the standard mark applied to gold, silver and other precious metals, which shows the quality of that metal. It is provided by the Bureau of India Standards.

AGMARK for agricultural products and ISI for industrial and consumer goods. The symbol is given. Similarly, wool mark for wool and woollen garments and hallmarks for gold jewelry are certified. In addition, the International Organization of Standardization is a world-class non-governmental organization. Products or services that meet the needs of the customer and the regulator and demonstrate continuous improvement. It currently has a network in 164 countries around the world. To avoid fraud, consumers should buy items with these marks.

In a developing country like India, arrangements have been made at the national level, state level and district level to deal with consumer dispute prevention from exploitation of consumers. Along with the government, voluntary organizations also have an important place. These institutions can do an important job of making consumers aware. At the same time, it is also necessary that consumers understand their rights themselves and come forward to make an active contribution to the consumer movement.

## Question

### Multiple Optional Questions-

1. Which of the following a public facility included.  
A. School                      B. Hospital                      C. Garden      D. All of the above
2. Who did the First calculation of national income in India?  
A. Dadabhai Naoroji                      B. Lal Bahadur Shastri  
C. Findlay Shiraz                      D. CSO
3. When does the Financial Year Start in India.  
A. January 1              B. April 1              C. July 1      D. October 1
4. When is Consumer Day celebrated in India?  
A. 24Th October                      B. 24th November  
C. 24th August                      D. 24th December
5. What is the level of consumer dispute redressal system?  
a. District level      b. State level              c. National level      d. All the above

### Fill in the blanks-

1. National Consumer Day is..... celebrated. (March 15/October 24)
2. First calculation of national income.....done by.  
(Dada bhai Naroji/Manmohan Singh)
3. Consumer Protection Act implemented in..... (1986/1991)
4. New Consumer Protection Act implemented in..... (1986/2019)

### Tell the truth/ false-

1. The new Consumer Protection Act came into force in India in 1986.  
(True/False)
2. The new Consumer Protection Act 2019 was implemented in 2020.  
(True/False)
3. Items that have an ISI sign are considered standardized. (True/False)
4. According to statistics in the year 2021-22, the per capita income in India is about Rupees. 93973  
(True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |             |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ISI      | A. Mark on Metals        |
| 2. F.P.O.   | B. Group of Farmers      |
| 3. Hallmark | C. Food Products         |
| 4. AGMARK   | D. Agriculture Marketing |

### Very short answer question-

1. What do you understand by national development?
2. What do you mean by national income?
3. Who are the consumers?
4. When was the Consumer Protection Bill passed by the Parliament?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. When was the first national income calculated in India? How per capita income is determined from national income.
2. What are the rights of the consumers?
3. What do you understand by sustainability of development?
4. Give any five reasons of consumer exploitation.
5. What do you know about consumer movement?
6. What do you understand by the major standard mark available on the items?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the meaning of development and describe the comparative status of development in the region and the states.
2. Explain the need and importance of consumer awareness.
3. How do producers and traders exploit consumers? Explain?
4. Explain clearly the rights and duties of the consumer.

### Project-

1. Students should organize consumer awareness week in their school and invite an expert to get information about consumer rights.



## Chapter-15

### Globalization and Financial System in India

**In this chapter-** Globalization, Indian Economy and Globalization, Domestic Production, Multinational Company, Economic Reforms, Liberalization, Privatization, Consequences, Problems arising out of Globalization, Money, Money in Vedic Literature, Evolution of Money, Functions of Money, Medium of Exchange Financial system, Major financial institutions, Credit, Credit in formal and informal sector in India.

Dear Vedic students! India has been world-famous for its knowledge, philosophy, and highly concentrated economy. Two thousand years ago, India accounted for about 32.9% of the world's gross domestic product (GDP), and its population was about 17% of the total population of the world. Since ancient times, goods manufactured in India have been exported far and wide to different parts of the world. Therefore, the concept of 'globalization' is nothing new for India; the idea of 'वसुधैव कुटुम्बकम्' (the whole earth is its own family) has been prevalent here from time immemorial.

**Globalization-** The process of working together in all the markets of the world is called globalization. Through globalization, people all over the world work together. Under this, the activities of all traders are internationalized. Through globalization, market forces have become independent and operate all over the world. One or several countries trade among themselves and share technology. Globalization is a process in which national economies expand outside their political boundaries. Therefore, globalization leads to increased economic openness and economic dependence between countries. Multinational companies are playing an important role in the process of globalization. At present, investment and exchange of technology in services are taking place between different countries. The development of information and communication technology has accelerated globalization. Due to this, most parts of the world (countries) have come into more contact with each other.

**Indian Economy and Globalization-** The system associated with the production, trade, consumption, etc. of goods and services in a country or region is called the economy. During the colonial period, the British had caused irreparable damage to Indian agriculture, industry, trade, etc., so the

#### World Trade Organization (W.T.O.)

- The World Trade Organization was established in 1995. It is an international organization, it makes rules of international trade to make world trade easier. At present there are 164 member countries of the WTO. The World Trade Organization provides free trade facilities to all countries. The headquarters of the World Trade Organization (W.T.O.) is in Geneva (Switzerland).

---

condition of India's economy had become low. After independence, the biggest challenge before the Indian economy was to move it forward at a rapid pace on the path of development. For this reason, many important decisions were taken in the 1950s that determined the nature of the Indian economy and the path of development. The economic reforms of the 1990s (liberalization, privatization, and globalization) have played a special role in determining the future of the Indian economy.

**Inland Production-** The production that takes place within the borders of the country is called inland production. Until the 1950s, production was mainly confined within the borders of countries. Raw materials, food items and finished products were imported and exported to other countries. Trade was a means of connecting remote countries.

**Multinational Company-** A multinational company controls and owns production in more than one country. A company that controls the production of goods or services in one or more countries other than its own country is called a multinational company. In areas where multinational companies can get cheap labor and other resources, these companies set up their construction units and offices. Globally, multinational companies are known as investments in the purchase of land, buildings, machines, and other equipment for the purpose of making profits. Foreign investment is the investment made by multinational companies in a country other than their own country.

**Economic Reforms-** After independence, our country adopted a mixed-economy structure and a policy of planned development. In order to correct the conditions of fiscal imbalance, faulty structure of the economy, and the balance of payments crisis, the New Economic Policy of the Government of India refers to the policies adopted in 1991 to bail out the Indian economy from the crisis. The measures of the new economic policy can be seen by dividing them into stabilization measures and structural adjustment programs. Stabilization measures were implemented for quick reforms in the economy. Under this, measures such as devaluing the exchange rate of the rupee, borrowing from the IMF, price stabilization, and increasing the supply of money were emphasized. At present, according to the Economic Review 2021–22, India's economic growth rate is estimated to be 8.0–8.5 percent in 2022–23, and according to the estimates of the World Bank, Asian Development Bank, and International Monetary Fund, India will remain the world's fastest-growing economy during 2021–24.

**Liberalization-** The process of removing barriers and restrictions by the government is called liberalization. Liberalization includes all the actions by which economic policies, rules, administrative controls, procedures, etc. which hinder the economic development of a country are eliminated. In its own development policy adopted before 1990 AD, the role of the government was to control and produce the economy. Under the new economic policy announced by the government in 1991 AD, several measures were taken to eliminate unwanted controls and restrictions in the economy.

**Privatization-** Selling public sector companies to the private sector in a phased manner is called privatization. Under this, the role of the public sector is reduced by providing more opportunities to the private sector in the economy. The disinvestment program was started in 1991-92 for privatization in India. Privatization helped the government establish fiscal discipline. Fiscal discipline refers to the policies and efforts of the government that are adopted to reduce the burden of government deficits and debt.

**Result-** Globalization had a huge impact on the lives of Indians. Its results can be understood as follows-

1. Globalization has provided consumers with more than one choice of goods, making them use quality and affordable goods.
2. Due to globalization, multinational companies in India have increased investment. This has created new jobs here.
3. Many Indian companies benefited from the increased business competition due to globalization. These companies have enhanced the quality of their production using the latest technology.
4. Globalization has created new opportunities for companies with information and communication technology.

**Problems arising out of globalization-** Globalization has created many problems in India along with benefits. These problems are as follows:

1. **Impact on small producers-** Small industries are not able to compete with goods produced abroad. As a result, many small industries have shut down. The condition of battery, capacitor, plastic, toys, tires, dairy products and edible oil industries is very bad.
2. **Uncertainty in employment-** Employment of workers is no longer assured. Factory owners now provide temporary employment to workers with the aim of reducing costs, so that they do not have to pay salaries throughout the year. At the same time, workers are not being given a fair share in the benefits of globalization.
3. **Not all people benefit-** Globalization has not been beneficial for everyone. Educated, skilled and affluent people have made the best use of the new opportunities given by globalization. On the contrary, the weaker and poorer sections of the society are far from the benefits of globalization.
4. **Regional disparities-** Regional disparities have increased due to globalization. Just as globalization has benefited developed countries more than developing countries.

So, the reality is that globalization has both good and bad effects on the Indian economy.

**Money-** Money is the commonly accepted means of exchange of goods and services. General acceptance as a means of payment or medium of exchange, is a special property of currency.

## Currency in Vedic Literature- Many forms of mudra are described in

Vedic literature. At the beginning of the development of civilization, in Vedic society, the cow was considered a medium of object-making. Over time, currencies like Koudi, Dhela etc. have also been in circulation in India. In Vedic literature, there is a mention of Niska coins in the form of gold currency. Ornaments were also made from pure metal. In the Rig Veda, the inactive man is called Nishkagriva -



Fig. 15.1 Ancient Indian coins

Nishkagriva (5/19/3). In Atharvaveda, there is a mention of a coin called Rukmavaksa' (6/22/2). In Shatapatha Brahmana, gold is called Shataman- तस्य त्रीणि शतमानानि हिरण्यानि दक्षिणा। (8/2/3/2) In his commentary, Sayan has considered Shatman a hundred-night gold coin. At that time, the silver coin was called Karshpan or Pan - it weighed 32 gems - (Taittiriya Brahmin (1/3/7) and (Vasudev Sharan Agarwal Paninikal Bharatvarsha, pp. 256–260). At that time, due to the rich economic condition of India, coins of gold, silver etc. were in circulation here as currency, which may have been till the Gupta period or Vardhan dynasty. After this, foreign invasions started taking place in India, and gradually the Indian currency reached its present form under colonial rule, passing through various forms of change (copper, iron, brass, etc.).

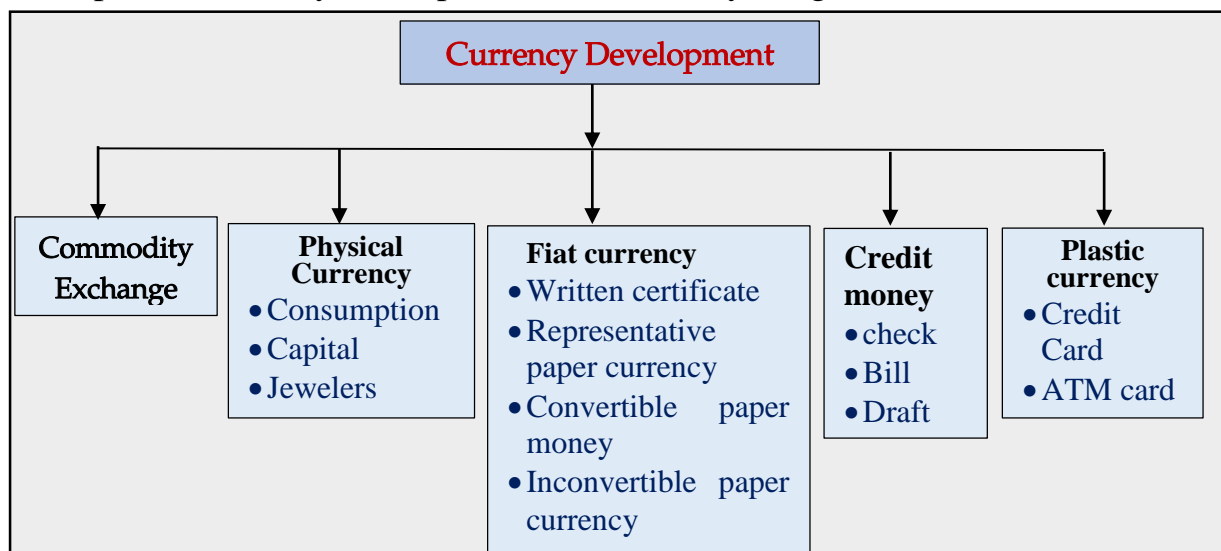
**Evolution of currency-** Over time, the difficulties of metal currency began to emerge. As a result, the banking system as well as the letter currency developed. Letter currency expanded in many forms, such as written certificates, representative paper currency, convertible paper currency, immutable paper currency, etc. Along with the expansion of the central bank and the commercial bank, credit currencies in the form of checks, hounds, and drafts were developed. At present, plastic currency in the form of credit and ATM cards is also in high circulation. Let us also try to understand the growth order of currency through the following chart.

**The functions of currency-** The sale and purchase of goods and services take place through money. At present, the value of each good or service is measured in currency. The value of all commodities in the market is expressed in the currency itself. Currency can be easily sent from one place to another. Therefore, the transfer of purchasing power has become easier. In the event of buying goods from a place, their value is paid by currency or by bank draft, check, money order, etc. Man by nature, saves to deal with future adversities. Savings through currency have become easier to keep for the future. Therefore, purchasing power can be accumulated.



**Medium of Exchange-** In the economic world, exchange refers to the transaction of goods. Before the circulation of currency, the medium of exchange used to be goods. Which is called barter. For example, giving grains in exchange for vegetables, etc. Giving money in exchange for a commodity is called money exchange. Money plays an intermediate role in currency exchange and eliminates the need for a double combination of requirements. Hence currency is called the medium of exchange.

**Currency-** Paper notes and coins (currency) are included in the modern forms of currency. The Indian rupee is the currency of India. Which is issued by the Reserve Bank of India, the (Central Bank of India.) According to the law of our country, no person or institution other than the Reserve Bank of India is allowed to issue currency. In addition, the law also provides for the validity of using the rupee as a medium of exchange. In our country, no person can legally reject money in transactions. One Indian rupee is equal to 100 paise. The symbol is designed by D. Uday Kumar. The design of this symbol is similar to R of Devanagari script and large R of English alphabet, with two horizontal lines at the top. In India, only one rupee note is issued by the government.



**Financial System-** The entities or individuals that transact money in a financial system are called financial institutions. The surplus amount that people have after meeting their daily needs is called savings. Often, people deposit these rupees by opening their accounts at the bank. These rupees are safe in the bank, and the bank also pays interest on these deposits; on the contrary, the bank also takes interest on the loan that provides the loan. Since the money deposited in banks can be withdrawn only by demand, this deposit is called a demand deposit. Banks also offer the facility of payment through cash, demand letters, checks, net banking, etc. A check is a piece of paper that the bank gives to another person with the name written on it from the person's account in the form of payment of a particular amount. A direct payment is made by check without using cash. At present, due to technology development, a number of works have been taken by

---

banks keeping in mind the interests of the citizens to facilitate currency deposits and withdrawals etc. Some of them are as follows:

**Net Banking-** The banking system in which the facility of financial transactions is provided to the customers through the bank's website by electronic payment system is called net banking. In this, the customer can take advantage of bank facilities through his mobile, computer etc. sitting at home.

**ATM-** ATM is an abbreviation for the English word **Automated Teller Machine**. Which has become very popular for banking work at present. This card is made of plastic and has a metal chip, on which all the details related to the bank account are recorded. The reality is that ATMs have changed the process of banking. It has made banking work much easier and more convenient.

A credit card is a card through which the holder can purchase goods and services with the commitment that he will later pay the value of these goods and services to his bank. The bank determines the amount of this card and its time limit in advance. This card is not linked to the bank account. The bank determines it based on the creditworthiness of the customer.

At present, banks have introduced digital banking services to make banking services very simple and secure for customers. Under this, customers are providing facilities from their mobile devices through UPI, banking apps, various private apps (Paytm, Phone Pay, Google Pay, etc.), Fast Tag (bar code imposed on vehicles to pay a toll tax), etc.

**Major Financial Institutions-** The major public and private sector financial institutions operating in India are as follows. Financial institutions include banks, insurance companies, moneylenders, landlords and self-help groups.

**Types of Banks-** The major banks of India are commercial or commercial banks, industrial banks, foreign exchange banks, agricultural banks, agricultural co-operative banks, land development banks, regional rural banks, national agricultural and rural development banks, reserve bank, international banks.

The above bank has different functions, these banks provide the benefits of various facilities and schemes to their respective customers.

**Credit-** Credit means the right to receive payment or to settle the obligation to pay due to the transfer of goods on demand or after a certain time. In the economic process, the lender and the borrower are two different parties. There is a need for a bridge between them that can connect these two sides. This role is played by financial intermediaries. Financial intermediaries are institutions and firms that act as a bridge or intermediary between depositors and borrowers in the financial market. These institutions receive funds from individuals who spend less than their income, i.e., save and provide credit to individuals and institutions who need money for production or consumption. Credit is a type of exchange function in which a lender currently offers some goods or currency to a borrower on the belief that after some time he will return them.

**Credit in formal and informal sector in India-** Banks, co-operative societies, domestic bankers, self-help groups, etc. provide credit in the formal sector. Institutions providing credit in the formal sector are registered with the Reserve Bank of India. They are controlled and directed by the Reserve Bank of India. Credit is provided at a fixed interest rate in the formal sector.



Figure- 15.2 Self Help Group

There is no control over lenders in the informal sector. And they charge interest at the desired rates. In the informal sector, Seth's, moneylenders, landlords, etc. provide loans. These people give their private capital as a loan, and these people charge high interest on this capital. Therefore, small shopkeepers, traders, and farmers should take cheap and affordable loans from banks and cooperative societies.

### Question

#### Multiple Choice Questions-

- Multi-national companies are usually factories they put it?
  - Near the Market
  - Where cheap labor Is Available
  - All of the Above
  - Where Educated Youth Are Available
- We have is the Headquarters of the World Trade Organization-
  - Geneva
  - New Delhi
  - Rome
  - London
- Which of the following is a medium of exchange?
  - Currency
  - Credit
  - Metal
  - Paper
- What is the Currency of India yes?
  - Dollar
  - Taka
  - Indian
  - Rupee
- Which of the following is an institution providing credit in the formal sector?
  - Seth
  - Moneylender
  - Bank
  - None of these

#### Fill in the blanks-

- Rupee symbol (₹) was given by..... (Arun Kumar/D Uday Kumar)
- Headquarters of the World Trade Organization .....I am.  
(Geneva/New York)
- The process of removal of barriers and restrictions by the government is called .....  
(Liberalization/Privatization)
- .....is called a medium of exchange (money/cloths)

#### Tell the truth/false-

- The WTO currently has 198 member countries. (True/False)
- Economic reforms were implemented under the new economic policy in July 1991. (True/False)

3. The Reserve Bank of India is the central bank of India. (True/False)
4. The new Economic Policy in India was announced in 1999 (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                             |         |
|-----------------------------|---------|
| 1. World Trade Organization | A. 1945 |
| 2. New Economic Policy      | B. 1995 |
| 3. United Nations           | C. 1991 |

### Very short answer question-

1. What do you understand by globalization?
2. What is inland production?
3. How many countries are currently members of the WTO?
4. What is currency?
5. Which is the central bank of India?
6. What is credibility?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What do you understand by privatization? Explain.
2. What is a multinational company? Give an example.
3. What do you know about the WTO?
4. Write down the functions of money.
5. What do you mean by financial system? What technology is currently being used to facilitate the financial system ?
6. What is the difference between ATM Card and Credit Card?

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What are the effects of globalization in India? What problems arose due to globalization?
2. Which economic policy was adopted to overcome the crisis of the Indian economy?
3. Explain the credibility in the formal and informal sector.
4. Write an article on the development of currency.

### Project-

1. Make of are the things it's what useful items in your daily life that are prodded by multinational companies.
2. What facilities are adopted in under digital banking your home?



## Chapter - 16

### India's current problems and efforts to solve

**In this chapter-** Major problems of India, population explosion, unemployment, poverty, terrorism, corruption, communalism, regionalism, drug abuse.

Although India has developed since independence, we have not been able to develop as fast as countries like Japan, Korea, and Germany, while India is still a developing country. The basic reason for this is that we are surrounded by some fundamental problems. In this chapter, we will study in detail the major problems facing India and the ways to solve them.

By adopting the education method mentioned in Vedic literature, it is possible to solve the problems of the present because the purpose of our Vedic education is the all-round development of the disciple. बृहस्पते सवितर्वर्धयैनं ज्योतयैनं महते सौभगाय । संशितं चित्संतरं सं शिशाधि विश्व एनमनु मदन्तु देवाः ॥ (Atharv. 7.16.1) That is, to enlighten the light of knowledge of the disciple, शं सरस्वती सह धीभिरस्तु । (Atharv. 19.11.2) भद्रमिच्छन्त ऋषयः स्वर्विदस्तपो दीक्षामुपनिषेदुरग्रे । (Atharv. 19.41.1) That is, the disciple should also coordinate etymology (Sumati, Vivek) with knowledge, so it is said that there should also be Dhee (Vivek) with Saraswati. For the attainment of this objective, the Vedas have created two means- penance (rigorous discipline) and initiation (dedication). Only rigorous discipline and self-dedication can serve this purpose.

It is clear from the above that restraint and character have been given great importance in the Vedic system of education. This is said to be an essential quality for both guru and disciple.

**Major problems of India-** Among, the major problems of India are population explosion, unemployment, poverty, terrorism, communalism, corruption, casteism, regionalism, drug abuse etc.

1. **Population explosion-** When the population growth rate in a country is so rapid that the resources available in the country cannot meet the requirements, this situation is called a population explosion. In 1951, India's population was about 36 crore, which is likely to be 139 crore in 2021. It is about 17.3% of the world's total population and 2.4% of the total area. In terms of population, India is second only to China in the world. Today, due to the increase in population, the problems of textiles, housing, food, drinking water, etc. have taken a terrible form. According to the 2011 census, Uttar Pradesh is the most populous state in the country, Sikkim has the least population, and Meghalaya (27.95%) has the highest growth rate. About half of India's population lives in Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Bihar, West Bengal, and Andhra Pradesh.

**Causes of population explosion-** The major causes of population explosion are joint family practices, child marriage, dependence on agriculture, lack of education, hot climate, declining mortality rate etc.

**Measures to prevent population explosion-** The most effective way to reduce the growth rate of the population in India is to reduce the birth rate. For this, the government should increase the age of marriage, determine the limit of childbearing, develop the means of family planning and entertainment, as well as spread education by providing social security.

2. **Unemployment-** When a person is eligible and willing to work but does not get work at the current prevailing wage rate that person is called unemployed and this situation is called unemployment. There are many types of unemployment such as open unemployment, hidden unemployment, seasonal unemployment, structural unemployment, technical unemployment, etc.

**Reasons for unemployment-** There are many reasons for unemployment in India such as lack of employment-oriented education and training, increasing population and labor force, unsuitable technology, backwardness of agriculture, jobless economic growth, faulty employment, mechanization in industries, lack of employment guidance etc.

**Measures to remove unemployment:** Among the major measures to remove unemployment, population growth should be controlled. Education should be made employable. Training centers should be opened at various places to impart training to unskilled laborers. Rural employment schemes should be expanded. New technologies should be used in agriculture.

3. **Poverty-** Poverty is a broad concept. Often, a lack of wealth is called poverty. Economically, a person whose income level is low is considered poor and unable to meet his material needs. A recognized terminology system has been used in different countries for the estimation of poverty. Poverty is a fundamental economic and social problem in India. There are two types of poverty: absolute poverty and relative poverty. Absolute poverty is a condition in which a person is unable to meet even the minimum needs of his life. Absolute poverty is found in underdeveloped nations. Poverty in India refers to absolute poverty. Relative poverty is a measure of relative inequalities in the distribution of income, wealth and consumption expenditure among different sections of society or a nation. It is found in developed countries.

The first attempt to measure poverty in India was made by Dada bhai Naoroji in 1868 AD. The C. Rangarajan Committee has identified monthly consumption expenditure of Rs.972 per capita in rural areas and Rs.1407 per capita monthly consumption expenditure in urban areas as poverty line for the year 2011-12. On this basis, poverty in India was 22% in the year 2020-21.

**Causes of poverty-** The major causes of poverty in India are wastage in social events, population growth, use of traditional technology in agriculture, mechanization of industries etc.

**Poverty alleviation measures-** To prevent poverty in India, there should be spread of education among all sections, development of health services, control of population, equal access to benefits of government schemes to all sections, increase in employment opportunities and ban on social evils.

4. **Terrorism-** When a person or organization makes a negative effort based on large-scale violence and unrest to fulfill its unreasonable demands, it is called

**terrorism.** Terrorism is a destructive trend. Terrorism is currently a global problem. Terrorists create an atmosphere of violence and fear in the world by carrying out immoral activities. Some foreign and fundamentalist forces and separatists in India are promoting terrorism. Terrorism in India manifests in three forms: communal, Naxal and caste terrorism.

**Consequences of terrorism-** Terrorism creates a sense of insecurity among the citizens, blocking economic development, resulting in the loss of public money, and undeclared war-like situation.

**Measures to counter terrorism-** Proper moral education should be given by all nations. External forces should be severely suppressed. To fight terrorism, the government should create a sense of awareness among the people of our country. The problem of terrorism can be tackled by strict border control and through political unity.

5. **Corruption-** When a person or organization goes beyond its prescribed legal scope and unfairly benefits another person or organization and in return harms the public interest by obtaining money or facilities, it is called corruption, and that person is called **corrupt**. Bribery, black marketing, hoarding, adulteration, under-measuring, and deliberately disobeying one's duty are forms of corruption. Most of the cases of corruption are related to the areas of procurement, grants, construction, licenses, permit allocation, loans, appointments, transfers, etc.

**Causes of corruption-** The main reasons for corruption are the decline of the morality of the individual and becoming over physical, lack of stringent laws an increase in economic inequality, etc.

**Measures to prevent corruption-** To prevent corruption, there should be transparency in the formulation of stringent laws, government decisions, procedures, and activities, and honest public servants should be publicly honored.

6. **Communalism-** In the Indian context, communalism is the result of the emergence of modern politics. Although we find some examples in Indian history that promote a feeling of communalism, all those incidents have been exceptional. Their influence on society and politics is not visible on a large scale. In the present context, the issue of communalism remains a matter of concern not only in India but also globally. When the people of a particular sect, forgetting the national interest and keeping faith in a particular sect or sect, work for its expansion and harm them by having hatred towards other sects and sects, then such a situation is called **communalism**. This creates an atmosphere of malice, violence and mutual distrust. Communalism is a grave curse for humanity and national integration.

**Causes of communalism-** Communalism has been a difficult problem in India since before independence. The main reasons for this are the policy of the British Government, selfish politicians accepting the unfair demands of various sects, promoting and disseminating every small incident happening in India by some countries, the indifference of the government, the feeling of separation among various sects etc.

**Consequences-** Communalism threatens national unity and integrity, political instability, mutual hatred and distrust in society. Communal riots lead to the loss of public money. Communal riots cause damage to public property, which hampers the development of the country. It was due to communalism that India was divided.

**Measures to overcome communalism-** Communalism is a curse for the entire human race. Moral and spiritual values should be added to education from the very beginning. The government, while making laws, should keep in mind that they are equally applicable to all citizens. Candidates should not be elected on the basis of religion, and the government should not always protect any particular sect, considering all religions equally.

7. **Regionalism-** Local residents' attachment to a particular region or province and its development efforts as compared to the Union or state fall under the category of regionalism. Regionalism aims to serve its narrow regional interests. In this way, the people of a particular region demand more economic, social, and political power than in other areas. Which becomes a big threat to the unity and integrity of any country.

**Factors for the Rise of Regionalism in India-** There are various reasons for the rise of regionalism in India, such as nature-given differences and inequalities, a lack of equitable distribution of resources by the administration or administrative discrimination, differences in central investment and development, historical and political reasons, cultural diversities, linguistic diversities, religious diversities, economic backwardness etc.

**Consequences of Regionalism-** Due to regionalism, the nation has to face many adverse consequences. For example, in the process of strengthening regional aspirations, the unity and integrity of the nation become secondary and the emergence of a sense of separatism challenges national identity. Due to regionalism, there has been a demand for new states in India from time to time on the basis of language, religion, culture, and natural and geographical differences. On a linguistic basis, the state of Andhra Pradesh was first formed on October 1, 1953. The States Reorganization Commission was set up in 1956 to meet the demands of the States on a linguistic basis. As a result, regional states were formed and regional politics got a boost. This did not make India grow at the pace it should. Regionalism has led to a sense of separatism (the process of isolation) in the country.

**Measures to prevent regionalism-** In order to prevent regionalism, it is the responsibility of the government to formulate a balanced and transparent policy without any political discrimination at the time of policymaking for the equitable development of the regions. In order to reduce regional differences, priority should be given to the development of basic means of irrigation, electricity, transport, and communication in backward and underdeveloped areas. Administratively, small states should be formed. Linguistic and cultural diversity should become the strength of the unity of the nation. We should respect the sovereignty, unity, and integrity of the country by not taking into account our personal interests.



8. **Drug abuse** - Substances that relax the brain, increase blood circulation and feel momentary pleasure from excitement are called drugs. Due to the consumption of drugs, a person is not able to control himself. At present, drugs are being consumed in large quantities. Drugs are produced in only a few countries of the world but are used all over the world. They are smuggled at high prices. Alcohol, tobacco, ganja, cannabis, opium, charas, cocaine, morphine, heroin etc. are narcotics.

**Effects of drugs-** Drug abuse reduces the physical and mental work capacity of a person and worsens the economic condition and hinders growth. Drug trafficking is an illegal activity that leads to disturbances in society and the country and disturbs the law and order situation.

**Measures to prevent drug abuse-** The harm caused by drug abuse should be linked to our primary education itself. This will prevent future citizens from consuming them. The government should stop the smuggling of these substances, and the culprits should be severely punished. To make people aware of the ill effects of these substances, consciousness should be awakened in society.

There are many other problems in India along with the above major ones. If these problems are controlled, then surely India will not only catch up with any developed nation in the world but will go beyond that and prosper.

### Question

#### Multiple Choice Questions-

1. What is the place of India in terms of population in the world?  
A. 1st                      B. 2nd                      C. 3rd                      D. 4th
2. Which of the following main problems of India-  
A. Corruption          B. Unemployment      C. Terrorism              D. All above
3. Which is the most populous state of India's?  
A. Uttar Pradesh      B. Sikkim                  C. Rajasthan              D. West Bengal
4. Who made the First attempt to measure poverty in India?  
A. Dada Bhai Naoroji                      B. Subhash Chandra Bose  
C. Narendra Modi                              D. Jawaharlal Nehru
5. Which of the following is a form of Terrorism-  
A. Communal terrorism                      B. Ethnic terrorism  
C. Naxal terrorism                              D. All of the above

#### Fill in the blanks-

1. The Population of India in 1951 .....was. (36 crores/56 crores)
2. India ranks .....in the world in terms of population (Second/third)
3. India's least populated state is ..... (Sikkim/Bihar)
4. About.....of the total population of the world lives in India.

#### Tell the truth/false-

1. People's attachment to a particular region/state is regionalism. (True/False)
2. Communalism is good for humanity. (True/False)
3. Moral and spiritual values are essential in education. (True/False)
4. Child marriage is the biggest reason to a population growth (True/False)

### Match the pair correctly-

- |                                  |                  |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Most populous state           | A. Sikkim        |
| 2. State with Minimum Population | B. Rajasthan     |
| 3. State with Highest Area       | C. Uttar Pradesh |
| 4. Largest state intermit Area   | D. Rajasthan     |

### Very short answer question-

1. What do you mean by population explosion?
2. State any two reasons for unemployment.
3. How many types of poverty are there?
4. What percentage of the world's population lives in India?
5. What is Communalism?

### Short Answer Questions-

1. What are the effects of drug abuse?
2. Suggest ways to prevent population explosions.
3. What is absolute poverty? Give any two reasons for poverty.
4. Explain the meaning and consequences of regionalism.

### Long Answer Questions-

1. What is corruption? Explain the causes, consequences and ways to prevent corruption.
2. What is communalism? Explain the causes, consequences and remedies of communalism.
3. State the causes and consequences of the population explosion.

### Project-

1. Highlight any problem causes in your area and ways to solve it.



सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

आदर्श प्रश्नपत्र / Model Q. Paper : V/23-24/ सामाजिक विज्ञान /

वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष / Vedabhusan Fifth Year/  
कक्षा 10वीं / पूर्व मध्यमा - II / Class 10<sup>th</sup> / Purv Madhyama - II  
वर्ष / Year 2023-24

विषय - सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science

पूर्णांक/M.M. – 100

समय/Time – 3 घण्टे

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>सभी प्रश्न हल करना अनिवार्य हैं।</li> <li>सभी प्रश्न के उत्तर पेपर में यथास्थान पर ही लिखें।</li> <li>इस प्रश्न पत्र में कुल 39 प्रश्न हैं, प्रत्येक प्रश्न के सामने निर्धारित अंक दिये गये हैं।</li> <li>उत्तीर्णता हेतु न्यूनतम 40% अंक निर्धारित हैं।</li> <li>आदर्श प्रश्न पत्र का छात्रों को लिखित परीक्षा हेतु अभ्यास कराएँ।</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is mandatory to attempt all the questions.</li> <li>Write down the answers at the appropriate places provided.</li> <li>This question paper contains 39 questions. Marks for each question are shown on the side.</li> <li>The minimum pass marks are 40%.</li> <li>The model question paper should be used by the students for written examination practice.</li> </ul>
--	--

बहुविकल्पीय प्रश्न -

1 × 10 = 10

Multiple Choice Questions -

1. निम्न में से भूमि निम्नीकरण का कारण हैं-

Which of the following is the cause of land degradation-

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| अ. खनन<br>Mining              | ब. अत्यधिक पशुचारण<br>Overgrazing |
| स. मृदा अपरदन<br>Soil erosion | द. ये सभी<br>All these            |

2. ऋग्वेद में कितने प्रकार के जलों का उल्लेख है-

How many types of water are mentioned in Rigveda-

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| अ. चार प्रकार<br>Four types  | ब. छः प्रकार<br>Six types |
| स. पाँच प्रकार<br>Five types | द. दो प्रकार<br>Two types |

3. किसी जीव की वे जातियाँ जिनके लुप्त होने का खतरा हो कहलाती हैं-

Those species of organism which are in danger of extinction are called-

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| अ. दुर्लभ जातियाँ<br>Rare species     | ब. सुभेद्य जातियाँ<br>Vulnerable species    |
| स. सामान्य जातियाँ<br>General species | द. संकटग्रस्त जातियाँ<br>Endangered species |

	1	वर्ष/Year - 2023-24
--	---	---------------------

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

4. भारत में सर्वप्रथम कोयला प्राप्त हुआ था-  
Coal was first obtained in India-
- अ. रानीगंज (पश्चिम बंगाल)                      ब. सिंहभूम (झारखण्ड)  
Raniganj (West Bengal)                      Singhbhoom (Jharkhand)
- स. हजारी बाग (झारखण्ड)                      द. राँची (झारखण्ड)  
Hazaribagh (Jharkhand)                      Ranchi (Jharkhand)
5. आधुनिक भारत में प्रथम लौह-इस्पात कारखाने की स्थापना हुई थी-  
The first iron-steel factory was established in modern India-
- अ. 1874 ई.    ब. 1889 ई.  
1874 AD    1889 AD
- स. 1907 ई.    द. 1909 ई.  
1907 AD    1909 AD
6. निम्न में से वैदिक दर्शन नहीं है-  
Which of the following is not a Vedic philosophy-
- अ. न्याय    ब. वैशेषिक  
Justice    Vaisheshika
- स. वेदांत    द. जैन  
Vedanta    Jain
7. देवनागरी लिपि में पहली छपी पुस्तक का नाम है-  
The name of the first printed book in Devanagari script is-
- अ. रूप माधुरी                                      ब. हिन्दी भाषा व्याकरण  
Roop Madhuri                                      Hindi language grammar
- स. हिन्दी शब्दकोष                              द. हिन्दुस्तानी भाषा का व्याकरण  
Hindi dictionary                              Grammar of Hindustani language
8. गाँधी-इरविन समझौता हुआ था-  
The Gandhi-Irwin Pact took place in-
- अ. 7 दिसम्बर 1930                              ब. 10 दिसम्बर 1930  
7 December 1930                              10 December 1930
- स. 5 मार्च 1931                                      द. 5 मार्च 1932  
5 March 1931                                      5 March 1932



सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

16. सत्य/असत्य कथन-

5 × 2 = 10

True/False statement –

**नोट-** नीचे पाँच कथन दिए गए हैं। उन कथनों को पढ़कर कथनों के दाहिनी ओर अंकित कोष्ठकों में सत्य या असत्य लिखिए।

**Note-** Five statements are given below. Read the statements and write true or false in the brackets marked on the right side of the statements.

A. गोबर गैस प्लाण्ट से किसानों को बायोगैस के साथ जैविक उर्वरक प्राप्त होता है। ( )

Farmers get organic fertilizer along with biogas from cow dung gas plant.

B. भारत सरकार ने पीआरएएसएडी (प्रसाद) योजना वर्ष 2014-2015 प्रारम्भ की थी। ( )

Government of India started the PRASAD (Prasad) scheme in the year 2014-2015.

C. प्रधानमन्त्री आवास योजना (PMAY) 25 जून 2015 को प्रारम्भ की गई थी। ( )

Pradhanmantri Awas Yojana (PMAY) was launched on 25 June 2015.

D. अर्थव्यवस्था के द्वितीयक क्षेत्र को औद्योगिक क्षेत्र भी कहा जाता है। ( )

The secondary sector of the economy is also called the industrial sector.

E. ब्राडगेज रेल लाइन में पटरियों के मध्य दूरी 1.676 मीटर होती है। ( )

The distance between the tracks in a broad gauge rail line is 1.676 metres.

17. सही जोड़ी मिलान कीजिए -

5 × 2 = 10

Match the correct pair –

**नोट-** स्तम्भ - 1 को स्तम्भ - 2 से सही जोड़ी मिलान के चार विकल्प (A, B, C, D) नीचे दिये गए हैं। सही विकल्प पर सही (✓) का चिह्न लगाइए।

**Note-** Four options (A, B, C, D) are given below to match Column-1 with Column-2 correctly. Tick (✓) the correct option.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

**स्तम्भ - 1**

Column - 1

- i. सांख्य दर्शन  
Samkhya philosophy
- ii. न्याय दर्शन  
Nyaya philosophy
- iii. वैशेषिक दर्शन  
Vaisheshika philosophy
- iv. अद्वैत दर्शन  
Advaita philosophy
- v. द्वैत दर्शन  
Dual philosophy

**स्तम्भ - 2**

Column - 2

- a. महर्षि कणाद  
Maharishi Kanad
- b. भगवत्पाद शङ्कराचार्य  
Bhagwatpad Shankaracharya
- c. मध्वाचार्य  
Madhwacharya
- d. कपिल मुनि  
Kapil Muni
- e. महर्षि अक्षपाद गौतम  
Maharishi Akshpad Gautam

A. i (c), ii (a), iii (b), iv (e), v (d)

B. i (e), ii (d), iii (b), iv (a), v (c)

C. i (d), ii (e), iii (a), iv (b), v (c)

D. i (c), ii (d), iii (b), iv (a), v (d)

**अति लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न-**

**10×2=20**

**Very short answer type questions -**

**नोट-** प्रश्न संख्या 18 से 27 तक के उत्तर पूर्ण वाक्य में देने हैं, नहीं तो अंक काट लिए जाएँगे।

**Note-** Question numbers 18 to 27 have to be answered in complete sentences, otherwise marks will be deducted.

18. जलीय चक्र (Water cycle) का संकेत करने वाला वेद मन्त्र लिखिए।

Write the Veda mantra indicating the water cycle.

-----  
-----

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

19. किस राष्ट्रीय उद्यान को यूनेस्को द्वारा 1985 ई. में विश्व धरोहर घोषित किया था?  
Which national park was declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1985?

20. विविध धातुओं की ओर संकेत करने वाला यजुर्वेद का मन्त्र लिखिए।  
Write the mantras of Yajurveda Pointed towards various metals.

21. भारत के किस भू-भाग को 'विश्व का खनिज आश्चर्य' कहा जाता है?  
Which part of India is called the 'Mineral Wonder of the World'?



सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

-----  
-----  
22. सांख्य दर्शन में कितने प्रकार के दुःख बताए गए हैं? नाम सहित उल्लेख कीजिए।

How many types of sorrows have been mentioned in Samkhya Darshan?  
Write the names.

-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
23. ब्रिटेन में औद्योगिक क्रान्ति के समय 'पूअर लॉ ऑथोरिटी' का क्या कार्य था?

What was the function of 'Poor Law Authority' in Britain at the time of industrial revolution?

-----  
-----  
-----  
-----  
24. भारतीय स्वतन्त्रता अधिनियम कब पारित हुआ था?

When was the Indian Independence Act passed?

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

25. पी.एम. श्री योजना - 2022 का सम्बन्ध किस क्षेत्र से है?

PM Shree Yojana-2022 is related to which field?

26. महर्षि सान्दीपनि राष्ट्रीय वेद विद्या प्रतिष्ठान के दो प्रमुख कार्य बताइए।

Mention two main functions of Maharishi Sandipani Rashtriya Ved Vidya Pratishthan.

27. 'प्रधानमंत्री किसान सम्मान निधि' के अन्तर्गत प्रतिवर्ष कितनी धनराशि पात्र कृषकों को दी जाती है?

How much amount is given to the eligible farmers every year under 'Pradhan Mantri Kisan Samman Nidhi'?

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न -

5 × 3 = 15

Short Answer Type Questions –

**नोट-** प्रश्न संख्या 28 से 32 तक के प्रश्नों के प्रत्येक के उत्तर 40-50 शब्दों में देने हैं।

**Note-** Answer of question number 28 to 32 is to be given in 40-50 words each.

28. मृदा किसे कहते हैं? मृदा के प्रकार को बताते हुए जलोढ मृदा की विशेषताओं का उल्लेख कीजिए।

What is soil? Explain the types of soil, along with the characteristics of alluvial soil.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

29. 'वैदिक वाङ्मय में जल' विषय पर संक्षिप्त टिप्पणी लिखिए।

Write a short note on the topic 'Water in Vedic literature'.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

30. मीमांसा दर्शन का परिचय संक्षेप में दीजिए।  
Give a brief introduction to Mimamsa philosophy.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

31. भारत में लोकतन्त्र की प्राचीनता का संक्षेप में उल्लेख कीजिए।  
Briefly mention the antiquity of democracy in India.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

32. प्राचीन भारत में मुद्रा प्रणाली पर टिप्पणी लिखिए।  
Write a note on the currency system in ancient India.

---

---

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

-----

-----

-----

-----

**दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न-**

**Long answer type questions**

**नोट-** दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न के दो खण्ड- 'अ' और 'ब' हैं। खण्ड 'अ' में चार प्रश्न हैं, जिनके प्रत्येक के उत्तर 120 से 150 शब्दों में देने हैं।

**Note** – There are two sections 'A' and 'B' of the long answer type question. Section 'A' has four questions, to be answered in 120 to 150 words each.

**खण्ड- अ**

**4×5=20**

**Section - A**

33. दर्शन से आप क्या समझते हैं? वैदिक दर्शन का संक्षेप में वर्णन करें।

What do you understand by philosophy? Briefly describe Vedic philosophy.

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----









सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

खण्ड - ब  
Section - B

2×2 ½=5

37. निम्नलिखित मन्त्र का भावार्थ लिखिए-

Write the meaning of the following mantra-

ॐ स्वस्ति, साम्राज्यं भौज्यं स्वाराज्यं वैराज्यं पारमेष्ठ्यं राज्यं महाराज्यमाधिपत्यमयं।

समन्तपर्यायीस्यात् सार्वभौमः सार्वायुषः आन्तादापरार्धात् पृथिव्यै समुद्रपर्यं ताया एकराळिति ॥

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science VSSB/24/10-5	वेदभूषण पञ्चम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedabhusan Fifth Year कक्षा 10वीं/पूर्व मध्यमा - II/Class 10 <sup>th</sup> /Purv Madhyama - II	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

38. भारत की मानचित्र मे निम्न वन्य जीव अभ्यारणों को अंकित कीजिए-

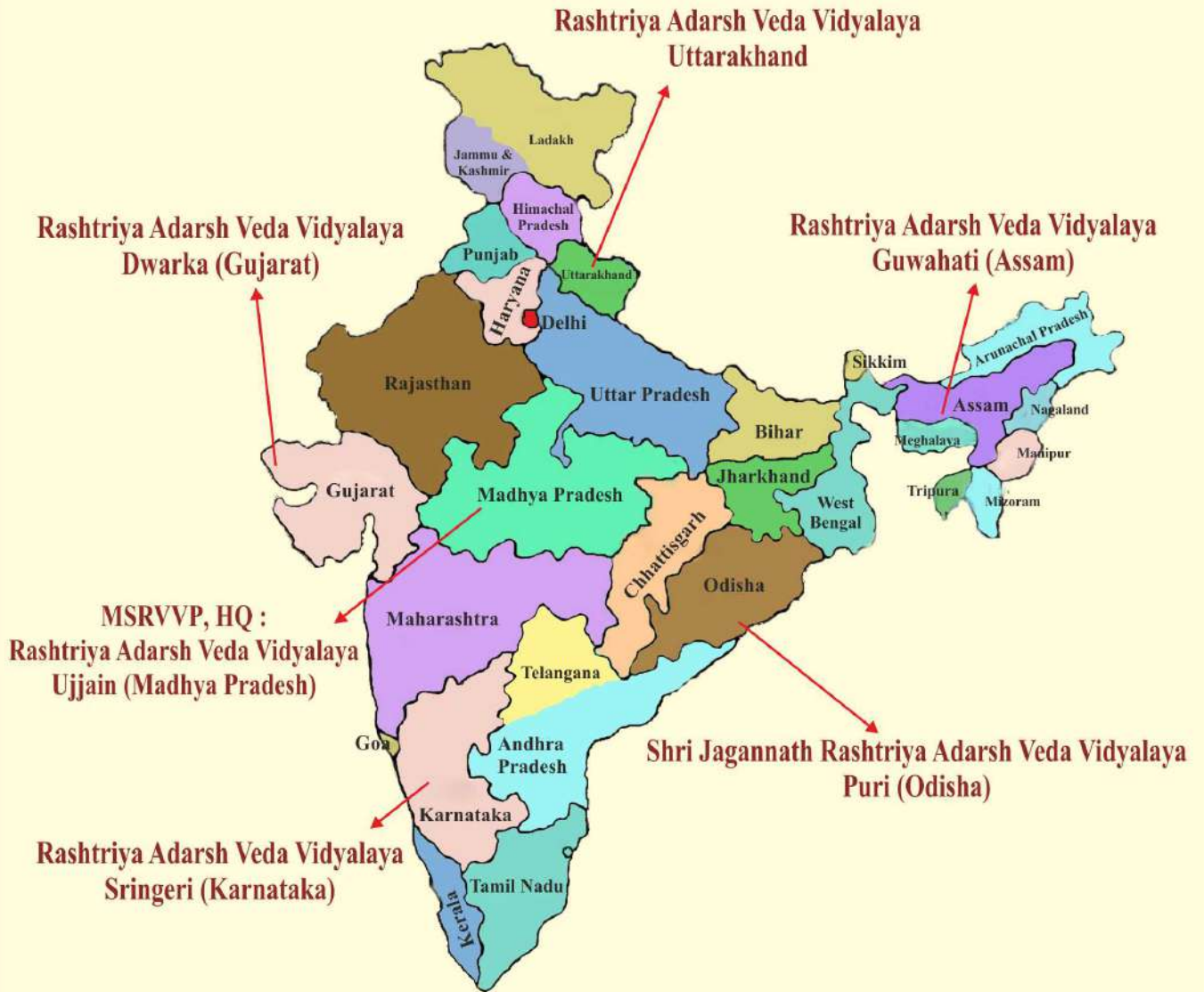
Mark the following wild life sanctuaries on the map of India-

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) दुधवा राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Dudhwa National Park       | (2) वादीपुर राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Vadipur National Park |
| (3) काजीरंगा राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Kaziranga National Park | (4) कान्हा राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Kanha National Park    |
| (5) घना राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Ghana National Park          | (6) गिर राष्ट्रीय उद्यान<br>Gir National Park         |



# Rashtriya Adarsh Veda Vidyalaya Run and Proposed by MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)



**MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)**

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Veda Vidya Marg, Chintaman, Jawasiya, Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh 456006

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpujn@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in